

# The fontspec package

## Font selection for X<sub>Y</sub>LaTeX and LuaLaTeX

WILL ROBERTSON and KHALED HOSNY  
<http://wspr.io/fontspec/>

2017/09/22 v2.6e

### Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>Getting started</b>	<b>6</b>
1	History	6
2	Introduction	6
2.1	Acknowledgements	6
3	Package loading and options	7
3.1	Font encodings	7
3.2	Maths fonts adjustments	7
3.3	Configuration	7
3.4	Warnings	8
4	Interaction with LaTeX 2 <sub>ε</sub> and other packages	8
4.1	Verbatim	8
4.2	Discretionary hyphenation: \-	8
4.3	Commands for old-style and lining numbers	8
4.4	Italic small caps	8
4.5	Emphasis and nested emphasis	9
4.6	Strong emphasis	9
<b>II</b>	<b>General font selection</b>	<b>11</b>
5	Font selection	12
5.1	By font name	12
5.2	By file name	12
5.3	By custom file name	14
5.4	Querying whether a font ‘exists’	14
6	Commands to select font families	15

6.1	More control over font shape selection . . . . .	16
6.2	Specifically choosing the NFSS family . . . . .	17
6.3	Choosing additional NFSS font faces . . . . .	18
6.4	Math(s) fonts . . . . .	20
7	Miscellaneous font selecting details . . . . .	20
<b>III Selecting font features</b>		<b>22</b>
8	Default settings . . . . .	22
9	Working with the currently selected features . . . . .	23
9.1	Priority of feature selection . . . . .	24
10	Different features for different font shapes . . . . .	24
11	Selecting fonts from TrueType Collections (TTC files) . . . . .	26
12	Different features for different font sizes . . . . .	26
13	Font independent options . . . . .	27
13.1	Colour . . . . .	28
13.2	Scale . . . . .	28
13.3	Interword space . . . . .	29
13.4	Post-punctuation space . . . . .	30
13.5	The hyphenation character . . . . .	30
13.6	Optical font sizes . . . . .	31
13.7	Font transformations . . . . .	31
13.8	Letter spacing . . . . .	33
<b>IV OpenType</b>		<b>34</b>
14	Introduction . . . . .	34
14.1	How to select font features . . . . .	34
14.2	How do I know what font features are supported by my fonts? . . . . .	35
15	OpenType font features . . . . .	36
15.1	Tag-based features . . . . .	36
15.2	Letters . . . . .	36
15.3	Style . . . . .	43
15.4	Diacritics . . . . .	45
15.5	Kerning . . . . .	45
15.6	Character width . . . . .	45
15.7	Vertical typesetting . . . . .	48
15.8	Numeric features . . . . .	48
15.9	OpenType scripts and languages . . . . .	50

<b>V</b>	<b>Commands for accents and symbols ('encodings')</b>	<b>55</b>
16	A new Unicode-based encoding from scratch	55
17	Adjusting a pre-existing encoding	56
18	Summary of commands	58
<b>VI</b>	<b>LuaTeX-only font features</b>	<b>59</b>
19	Custom font features	59
<b>VII</b>	<b>Fonts and features with XeTeX</b>	<b>61</b>
20	XeTeX-only font features	61
20.1	Mapping	61
20.2	Different font technologies: AAT and OpenType	61
20.3	Optical font sizes	61
21	Mac OS X's AAT fonts	62
21.1	Ligatures	62
21.2	Letters	62
21.3	Numbers	62
21.4	Contextuals	63
21.5	Vertical position	63
21.6	Fractions	63
21.7	Variants	63
21.8	Alternates	65
21.9	Style	65
21.10	CJK shape	65
21.11	Character width	66
21.12	Vertical typesetting	66
21.13	Diacritics	66
21.14	Annotation	66
<b>VIII</b>	<b>Customisation and programming interface</b>	<b>67</b>
22	Defining new features	67
23	Defining new scripts and languages	68
24	Going behind fontspec's back	68
25	Renaming existing features & options	68
26	Programming interface	69
26.1	Variables	69

26.2	Functions for loading new fonts and families . . . . .	69
26.3	Conditionals . . . . .	70
<b>IX</b>	<b>Implementation</b>	<b>72</b>
<b>27</b>	<b>Loading</b>	<b>72</b>
<b>28</b>	<b>Declaration of variables and functions</b>	<b>72</b>
28.1	Generic functions . . . . .	74
28.2	expl3 variants . . . . .	75
<b>29</b>	<b>Error/warning/info messages</b>	<b>75</b>
29.1	Errors . . . . .	76
29.2	Warnings . . . . .	77
29.3	Info messages . . . . .	79
<b>30</b>	<b>Opening code</b>	<b>80</b>
30.1	Package options . . . . .	80
30.2	Encodings . . . . .	80
<b>31</b>	<b>expl3 interface for primitive font loading</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>32</b>	<b>User commands</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>33</b>	<b>User command internals</b>	<b>85</b>
33.1	Font selection . . . . .	85
33.2	Font feature selection . . . . .	88
33.3	Defining new font features . . . . .	90
<b>34</b>	<b>Programmer's interface</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>35</b>	<b>Internals</b>	<b>98</b>
35.1	The main function for setting fonts . . . . .	98
35.2	Setting font shapes in a family . . . . .	106
35.3	Initialisation . . . . .	114
35.4	Miscellaneous . . . . .	115
<b>36</b>	<b>OpenType definitions code</b>	<b>116</b>
36.1	Adding features when loading fonts . . . . .	117
36.2	OpenType feature information . . . . .	120
<b>37</b>	<b>Graphite/AAT code</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>38</b>	<b>Font loading (keyval) definitions</b>	<b>124</b>
38.1	OpenType feature definitions . . . . .	138
38.2	Regular key=val / tag definitions . . . . .	138
38.3	OpenType features that need numbering . . . . .	143
38.4	Script and Language . . . . .	144
38.5	Backwards compatibility . . . . .	146

38.6	Font script definitions . . . . .	147
38.7	Font language definitions . . . . .	150
38.8	AAT feature definitions . . . . .	157
<b>39</b>	<b>Extended font encodings</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>40</b>	<b>Selecting maths fonts</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>41</b>	<b>Closing code</b>	<b>166</b>
41.1	Finishing up . . . . .	166
<b>42</b>	<b>Changes to the NFSS</b>	<b>167</b>
42.1	Italic small caps and so on . . . . .	167
42.2	Emphasis . . . . .	168
42.3	Strong emphasis . . . . .	169
<b>43</b>	<b>Patching code</b>	<b>171</b>
43.1	\- . . . . .	171
43.2	Verbatims . . . . .	171
43.3	\oldstylenums . . . . .	173

## Part I

# Getting started

## 1 History

This package began life as a  $\LaTeX$  interface to select system-installed Mac OS X fonts in Jonathan Kew's  $X\TeX$ , the first widely-used Unicode extension to  $\TeX$ . Over time,  $X\TeX$  was extended to support OpenType fonts and then was ported into a cross-platform program to run also on Windows and Linux.

More recently,  $\LuaTeX$  is fast becoming the  $\TeX$  engine of the day; it supports Unicode encodings and OpenType fonts and opens up the internals of  $\TeX$  via the Lua programming language. Hans Hagen's  $\ConTeXt$  Mk. IV is a re-write of his powerful typesetting system, taking full advantage of  $\LuaTeX$ 's features including font support; a kernel of his work in this area has been extracted to be useful for other  $\TeX$  macro systems as well, and this has enabled `fontspec` to be adapted for  $\LaTeX$  when run with the  $\LuaTeX$  engine.

## 2 Introduction

The `fontspec` package allows users of either  $X\TeX$  or  $\LuaTeX$  to load OpenType fonts in a  $\LaTeX$  document. No font installation is necessary, and font features can be selected and used as desired throughout the document.

Without `fontspec`, it is necessary to write cumbersome font definition files for  $\LaTeX$ , since  $\LaTeX$ 's font selection scheme (known as the 'NFSS') has a lot going on behind the scenes to allow easy commands like `\emph` or `\bfseries`. With an uncountable number of fonts now available for use, however, it becomes less desirable to have to write these font definition (`.fd`) files for every font one wishes to use.

Because `fontspec` is designed to work in a variety of modes, this user documentation is split into separate sections that are designed to be relatively independent. Nonetheless, the basic functionality all behaves in the same way, so previous users of `fontspec` under  $X\TeX$  should have little or no difficulty switching over to  $\LuaTeX$ .

This manual can get rather in-depth, as there are a lot of details to cover. See the documents `fontspec-example.tex` for a complete minimal example to get started quickly.

### 2.1 Acknowledgements

This package could not have been possible without the early and continued support the author of  $X\TeX$ , Jonathan Kew. When I started this package, he steered me many times in the right direction.

I've had great feedback over the years on feature requests, documentation queries, bug reports, font suggestions, and so on from lots of people all around the world. Many thanks to you all.

Thanks to David Perry and Markus Böhning for numerous documentation improvements and David Perry again for contributing the text for one of the sections

of this manual.

Special thanks to Khaled Hosny, who was the driving force behind the support for Lua $\TeX$ , ultimately leading to version 2.0 of the package.

## 3 Package loading and options

For basic use, no package options are required:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
```

Package options will be introduced below; some preliminary details are discussed first.

### 3.1 Font encodings

The 2016 release of `fontspec` initiated some changes for font encodings and the loading of `xunicode`. The 2017 release rolls out those changes as default.

The now-default `tuenc` package option switches the `nfss` font encoding to `TU`. `TU` is a new Unicode font encoding, intended for both  $\TeX$  and Lua $\TeX$  engines, and automatically contains support for symbols covered by  $\TeX$ 's traditional `T1` and `TS1` font encodings (for example, `\%`, `\textbullet`, `\"u`, and so on). As a result, with this package option, Ross Moore's `xunicode` package is **not** loaded. Some new, experimental, features are now provided to customise some encoding details; see Part [V on page 55](#) for further details.

Pre-2017 behaviour can be achieved with the `euenc` package option. This selects the `EU1` or `EU2` encoding ( $\TeX$ /Lua $\TeX$ , resp.) and loads the `xunicode` package. Package authors and users who have referred explicitly to the encoding names `EU1` or `EU2` should update their code or documents. (See internal variable names described in [Section 26 on page 69](#) for how to do this properly.)

### 3.2 Maths fonts adjustments

By default, `fontspec` adjusts  $\TeX$ 's default maths setup in order to maintain the correct Computer Modern symbols when the roman font changes. However, it will attempt to avoid doing this if another maths font package is loaded (such as `mathpazo` or the `unicode-math` package).

If you find that `fontspec` is incorrectly changing the maths font when it shouldn't be, apply the `no-math` package option to manually suppress its behaviour here.

### 3.3 Configuration

If you wish to customise any part of the `fontspec` interface, this should be done by creating your own `fontspec.cfg` file, which will be automatically loaded if it is found by  $\TeX$  or Lua $\TeX$ . A `fontspec.cfg` file is distributed with `fontspec` with a small number of defaults set up within it.

To customise `fontspec` to your liking, use the standard `.cfg` file as a starting point or write your own from scratch, then either place it in the same folder as the main document for isolated cases, or in a location that  $\TeX$  or Lua $\TeX$  searches by default; e.g. in Mac $\TeX$ : `~/Library/texmf/tex/latex/`.

The package option `no-config` will suppress the loading of the `fontspec.cfg` file under all circumstances.

### 3.4 Warnings

This package can give some warnings that can be harmless if you know what you're doing. Use the `quiet` package option to write these warnings to the transcript (`.log`) file instead.

Use the `silent` package option to completely suppress these warnings if you don't even want the `.log` file cluttered up.

## 4 Interaction with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and other packages

This section documents some areas of adjustment that `fontspec` makes to improve default behaviour with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and third-party packages.

### 4.1 Verbatim

Many verbatim mechanisms assume the existence of a 'visible space' character that exists in the ASCII space slot of the typewriter font. This character is known in Unicode as U+2423: BOX OPEN, which looks like this: '␣'.

When a Unicode typewriter font is used, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X no longer prints visible spaces for the `verbatim*` environment and `\verb*` command. This problem is fixed by using the correct Unicode glyph, and the following packages are patched to do the same: `listings`, `fancyvrb`, `moreverb`, and `verbatim`.

In the case that the typewriter font does not contain '␣', the Latin Modern Mono font is used as a fallback.

### 4.2 Discretionary hyphenation: \-

- \- L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X defines the macro `\-` to insert discretionary hyphenation points. However, it is hard-coded in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to use the hyphen `-` character. Since `fontspec` provides features to change the hyphenation character on a per font basis, the definition of `\-` is changed to adapt accordingly.

### 4.3 Commands for old-style and lining numbers

- `\oldstylenums` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's definition of `\oldstylenums` relies on strange font encodings. We provide a `fontspec`-compatible alternative and while we're at it also throw in the reverse option as well. Use `\oldstylenums{<text>}` to explicitly use old-style (or lowercase) numbers in `<text>`, and the reverse for `\liningnums{<text>}`.
- `\liningnums`

### 4.4 Italic small caps

- `\itshape` Note that this package redefines the `\itshape`, `\slshape`, and `\scshape` commands
- `\slshape` in order to allow them to select italic small caps in conjunction. With these changes,
- `\scshape` writing `\itshape\scshape` will lead to italic small caps, and `\upshape` subsequently



then moves back to small caps only. `\upshape` again returns from small caps to upright regular. (And similarly for `\slshape`. In addition, once italic small caps are selected then `\slshape` will switch to slanted small caps, and vice versa.)

## 4.5 Emphasis and nested emphasis

`\emminershape` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> allows you to specify the behaviour of `\emph` nested within `\emph` by setting the `\emminershape` command. For example,

```
\renewcommand\emminershape{\upshape\scshape}
```

will produce small caps within `\emph{\emph{...}}`.

`\emfontdeclare` The `fontspec` package takes this idea one step further to allow arbitrary font shape changes and arbitrary levels of nesting within emphasis. This is performed using the `\emfontdeclare` command, which takes a comma-separated list of font switches corresponding to increasing levels of emphasis. An example:

- i. `\emfontdeclare{\itshape, \upshape\scshape, \itshape}` will lead to ‘italics’, ‘small caps’, then ‘italic small caps’ as the level of emphasis increases, as long as italic small caps are defined for the font. Note that `\upshape` is required because the font changes are cascading.

The implementation of this feature tries to be ‘smart’ and guess what level of emphasis to use in the case of manual font changing. This is reliable only if you use shape-changing commands in `\emfontdeclare`. For example:

```
\emfontdeclare{\itshape, \upshape\scshape, \itshape}
...
\scshape small caps \emph{hello}
```

Here, the emphasised text ‘hello’ will be printed in italic small caps since `\emph` can detect that the current font shape is already in the second ‘mode’ of emphasis.

`\emreset` Finally, if you have so much nested emphasis that `\emfontdeclare` runs out of options, it will insert `\emreset` (by default just `\upshape`) and start again from the beginning.

## 4.6 Strong emphasis

`\strong` The `\strong` macro is used analogously to `\emph` but produces variations in weight. `\strongenv` If you need it in environment form, use `\begin{strongenv}... \end{strongenv}`.

As with emphasis, this font-switching command is intended to move through a range of font weights. For example, if the fonts are set up correctly it allows usage such as `\strong{... \strong{...}}` in which each nested `\strong` macro increases the weight of the font.

`\strongfontdeclare` Currently this feature set is somewhat experimental and there is no syntactic sugar to easily define a range of font weights using `fontspec` commands. Use, say, the following to define first bold and then black (k) font faces for `\strong`:

```
\strongfontdeclare{\bfseries, \fontseries{k}\selectfont}
```

`\strongreset`      If too many levels of `\strong` are reached, `\strongreset` is inserted. By default this is a no-op and the font will simply remain the same. Use `\renewcommand\strongreset{\mdseries}` to start again from the beginning if desired.

    An example for setting up a font family for use with `\strong` is discussed in [6.3.1](#) on page 19.

## Part II

# General font selection

This section concerns the variety of commands that can be used to select fonts.

```
\fontspec{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setmainfont{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setsansfont{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setmonofont{<font name>}[<font features>]
\newfontfamily<cmd>{<font name>}[<font features>]
```

These are the main font-selecting commands of this package. The `\fontspec` command selects a font for one-time use only; all others should be used to define the standard fonts used in a document, as shown in Example 1. Here, the scales of the fonts have been chosen to equalise their lowercase letter heights. The `Scale` font feature will be discussed further in Section 13 on page 27, including methods for automatic scaling. Note that further options may need to be added to select appropriate bold/italic fonts, but this shows the main idea.

Note that while these commands all look and behave largely identically, the default setup for font loading automatically adds the `Ligatures=TeX` feature for the `\setmainfont` and `\setsansfont` commands. These defaults (and further customisations possible) are discussed in Section 8 on page 22.

The font features argument accepts comma separated `<font feature>=<option>` lists; these are described later:

- For general font features, see Section 13 on page 27
- For OpenType fonts, see Part IV on page 34
- For X<sub>Y</sub>TeX-only general font features, see Part VII on page 61
- For LuaTeX-only general font features, see Part VI on page 59
- For features for AAT fonts in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX, see Section 21 on page 62

---

Example 1: Loading the default, sans serif, and monospaced fonts.

---

```
\setmainfont{texgyrebonum-regular.otf}
\setsansfont{lmsans10-regular.otf}[Scale=MatchLowercase]
\setmonofont{Inconsolatazi4-Regular.otf}[Scale=MatchLowercase]

\rmfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\sfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\ttfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs
```

---

## 5 Font selection

In both Lua $\TeX$  and X $\TeX$ , fonts can be selected either by ‘font name’ or by ‘file name’, but there are some differences in how each engine finds and selects fonts — don’t be too surprised if a font invocation in one engine needs correction to work in the other.

### 5.1 By font name

Fonts known to Lua $\TeX$  or X $\TeX$  may be loaded by their standard names as you’d speak them out loud, such as *Times New Roman* or *Adobe Garamond*. ‘Known to’ in this case generally means ‘exists in a standard fonts location’ such as `~/Library/Fonts` on Mac OS X, or `C:\Windows\Fonts` on Windows. In Lua $\TeX$ , fonts found in the `TEXMF` tree can also be loaded by name.

The simplest example might be something like

```
\setmainfont{Cambria}[ ... ]
```

in which the bold and italic fonts will be found automatically (if they exist) and are immediately accessible with the usual `\textit` and `\textbf` commands.

The ‘font name’ can be found in various ways, such as by looking in the name listed in a application like *Font Book* on Mac OS X. Alternatively,  $\TeX$ Live contains the `otfinfo` command line program, which can query this information; for example:

```
otfinfo -a `kpsewhich lmrroman10-regular.otf`
```

results in ‘LM Roman 10’.

**Lua $\TeX$  users only** In order to load fonts by their name rather than by their file-name (e.g., ‘Latin Modern Roman’ instead of ‘ec-lmr10’), you may need to run the script `luaotfload-tool`, which is distributed with the `luaotfload` package. Note that if you do not execute this script beforehand, the first time you attempt to typeset the process will pause for (up to) several minutes. (But only the first time.) Please see the `luaotfload` documentation for more information.

### 5.2 By file name

X $\TeX$  and Lua $\TeX$  also allow fonts to be loaded by file name instead of font name. When you have a very large collection of fonts, you will sometimes not wish to have them all installed in your system’s font directories. In this case, it is more convenient to load them from a different location on your disk. This technique is also necessary in X $\TeX$  when loading OpenType fonts that are present within your  $\TeX$  distribution, such as `/usr/local/texlive/2013/texmf-dist/fonts/opentype/public`. Fonts in such locations are visible to X $\TeX$  but cannot be loaded by font name, only file name; Lua $\TeX$  does not have this restriction.

When selecting fonts by file name, any font that can be found in the default search paths may be used directly (including in the current directory) without having to explicitly define the location of the font file on disk.

Fonts selected by filename must include bold and italic variants explicitly.

```

\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[
  BoldFont      = texgyrepagella-bold.otf ,
  ItalicFont    = texgyrepagella-italic.otf ,
  BoldItalicFont = texgyrepagella-bolditalic.otf ]

```

fontspec knows that the font is to be selected by file name by the presence of the `.otf` extension. An alternative is to specify the extension separately, as shown following:

```

\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
  Extension      = .otf ,
  BoldFont      = texgyrepagella-bold ,
  ... ]

```

If desired, an abbreviation can be applied to the font names based on the mandatory `'font name'` argument:

```

\setmainfont{texgyrepagella}[
  Extension      = .otf ,
  UprightFont    = *-regular ,
  BoldFont      = *-bold ,
  ... ]

```

In this case `'texgyrepagella'` is no longer the name of an actual font, but is used to construct the font names for each shape; the `*` is replaced by `'texgyrepagella'`. Note in this case that `UprightFont` is required for constructing the font name of the normal font to use.

To load a font that is not in one of the default search paths, its location in the filesystem must be specified with the `Path` feature:

```

\setmainfont{texgyrepagella}[
  Path           = /Users/will/Fonts/ ,
  UprightFont    = *-regular ,
  BoldFont      = *-bold ,
  ... ]

```

Note that X<sub>Y</sub>TeX and LuaTeX are able to load the font without giving an extension, but fontspec must know to search for the file; this can be indicated by using the `Path` feature without an argument:

```

\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
  Path, BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold,
  ... ]

```

My preference is to always be explicit and include the extension; this also allows fontspec to automatically identify that the font should be loaded by filename.

In previous versions of the package, the `Path` feature was also provided under the alias `ExternalLocation`, but this latter name is now deprecated and should not be used for new documents.

### 5.3 By custom file name

When `fontspec` is first asked to load a font, a font settings file is searched for with the name '`\fontname\fontspec`'.<sup>1</sup> If you want to *disable* this feature on a per-font basis, use the `IgnoreFontspecFile` font option.

The contents of this file can be used to specify font shapes and font features without having to have this information present within each document. Therefore, it can be more flexible than the alternatives listed above.

When searching for this `.fontspec` file, `\fontname` is stripped of spaces and file extensions are omitted. For example, given `\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}`, the `.fontspec` file would be called `TeXGyreAdventor.fontspec`. If you wanted to transparently load options for `\setmainfont{texgyreadventor-regular.otf}`, the configuration file would be `texgyreadventor-regular.fontspec`.

N.B. that while spaces are stripped, the lettercase of the names should match.

This mechanism can be used to define custom names or aliases for your font collections. The syntax within this file follows from the `\defaultfontfeatures`, defined in more detail later but mirroring the standard `fontspec` font loading syntax. As an example, suppose we're defining a font family to be loaded with `\setmainfont{My Charis}`. The corresponding `MyCharis.fontspec` file would contain, say,

```
\defaultfontfeatures[My Charis]
{
  Extension = .ttf ,
  UprightFont = CharisSILR,
  BoldFont = CharisSILB,
  ItalicFont = CharisSILI,
  BoldItalicFont = CharisSILBI,
  % <any other desired options>
}
```

The optional argument to `\defaultfontfeatures` must exactly match that requested by the font loading command (`\setmainfont`, etc.) — in particular note that spaces are significant here, so `\setmainfont{MyCharis}` will not 'see' the default font feature setting within the `.fontspec` file.

Finally, note that options for individual font faces can also be defined in this way. To continue the example above, here we colour the different faces:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILR]{Color=blue}
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILB]{Color=red}
```

Such configuration lines could be stored either inline inside `My Charis.fontspec` or within their own `.fontspec` files; in this way, `fontspec` is designed to handle 'nested' configuration options.

### 5.4 Querying whether a font 'exists'

`\IfFontExistsTF{<font name>}{<>true branch>}{<>false branch>}`

<sup>1</sup> Located in the current folder or within a standard `texmf` location.

The conditional `\IfFontExistsTF` is provided to test whether the  $\langle font\ name\rangle$  exists or is loadable. If it is, the  $\langle true\ branch\rangle$  code is executed; otherwise, the  $\langle false\ branch\rangle$  code is.

This command can be slow since the engine may resort to scanning the filesystem for a missing font. Nonetheless, it has been a popular request for users who wish to define ‘fallback fonts’ for their documents for greater portability.

In this command, the syntax for the  $\langle font\ name\rangle$  is a restricted/simplified version of the font loading syntax used for `\fontspec` and so on. Fonts to be loaded by filename are detected by the presence of an appropriate extension (`.otf`, etc.), and paths should be included inline. E.g.:

```
\IfFontExistsTF{cmr10}{T}{F}
\IfFontExistsTF{Times New Roman}{T}{F}
\IfFontExistsTF{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}{T}{F}
\IfFontExistsTF{/Users/will/Library/Fonts/CODE2000.TTF}{T}{F}
```

The `\IfFontExistsTF` command is a synonym for the programming interface function `\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF` ([Section 26 on page 69](#)).

## 6 Commands to select font families

```
\newfontfamily\langle font-switch\rangle{\langle font name\rangle}[\langle font features\rangle]
\newfontface\langle font-switch\rangle{\langle font name\rangle}[\langle font features\rangle]
```

For cases when a specific font with a specific feature set is going to be re-used many times in a document, it is inefficient to keep calling `\fontspec` for every use. While the `\fontspec` command does not define a new font instance after the first call, the feature options must still be parsed and processed.

`\newfontfamily` For this reason, new commands can be created for loading a particular font family with the `\newfontfamily` command, demonstrated in [Example 2](#). This macro should be used to create commands that would be used in the same way as `\rmfamily`, for example. If you would like to create a command that only changes the font inside its argument (i.e., the same behaviour as `\emph`) define it using regular  $\LaTeX$  commands:

```
\newcommand\textnote[1]{\notefont #1}
\textnote{This is a note.}
```

Note that the double braces are intentional; the inner pair are used to to delimit the scope of the font change.

`\newfontface` Sometimes only a specific font face is desired, without accompanying italic or bold variants being automatically selected. This is common when selecting a fancy italic font, say, that has swash features unavailable in the upright forms. `\newfontface`

---

Example 2: Defining new font families.

---

This is a *note*.

```
\newfontfamily\notefont{Kurier}
\notefont This is a \emph{note}.
```

---

---

Example 3: Defining a single font face.

---

<i>where is all the vegemite</i>	<pre>\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic}%   [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}] \fancy where is all the vegemite % \emph, \textbf, etc., all don't work</pre>
----------------------------------	---

---

is used for this purpose, shown in Example 3, which is repeated in [Section 2.1.4 on page 63](#).

Comment for advanced users: The commands defined by `\newfontface` and `\newfontfamily` include their encoding information, so even if the document is set to use a legacy T<sub>E</sub>X encoding, such commands will still work correctly. For example,

```
\documentclass{article}  
\usepackage{fontspec}  
\newfontfamily\unicodefont{Lucida Grande}  
\usepackage{mathpazo}  
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}  
\begin{document}  
A legacy \TeX\ font. {\unicodefont A unicode font.}  
\end{document}
```

## 6.1 More control over font shape selection

<pre>BoldFont = &lt;font name&gt; ItalicFont = &lt;font name&gt; BoldItalicFont = &lt;font name&gt; SlantedFont = &lt;font name&gt; BoldSlantedFont = &lt;font name&gt; SmallCapsFont = &lt;font name&gt;</pre>
---

The automatic bold, italic, and bold italic font selections will not be adequate for the needs of every font: while some fonts mayn't even have bold or italic shapes, in which case a skilled (or lucky) designer may be able to chose well-matching accompanying shapes from a different font altogether, others can have a range of bold and italic fonts to chose among. The `BoldFont` and `ItalicFont` features are provided for these situations. If only one of these is used, the bold italic font is requested as the default from the *new* font. See Example 4.

If a bold italic shape is not defined, or you want to specify *both* custom bold and italic shapes, the `BoldItalicFont` feature is provided.

### 6.1.1 Small caps and slanted font shapes

When a font family has both slanted *and* italic shapes, these may be specified separately using the analogous features `SlantedFont` and `BoldSlantedFont`. Without these, however, the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font switches for slanted (`\textsl`, `\slshape`) will default to the italic shape.



---

Example 4: Explicit selection of the bold font.

---

```

\fontspec{Helvetica Neue UltraLight}%
Helvetica Neue UltraLight           [BoldFont={Helvetica Neue}]
Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic   Helvetica Neue UltraLight   \
Helvetica Neue                       {\itshape Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic} \
Helvetica Neue Italic              {\bfseries Helvetica Neue } \
                                      {\bfseries\itshape Helvetica Neue Italic} \

```

---

Pre-OpenType, it was common for font families to be distributed with small caps glyphs in separate fonts, due to the limitations on the number of glyphs allowed in the PostScript Type 1 format. Such fonts may be used by declaring the `SmallCapsFont` of the family you are specifying:

```

\setmainfont{Minion MM Roman}[
  SmallCapsFont={Minion MM Small Caps & Oldstyle Figures}
]
Roman 123 \ \textsc{Small caps 456}

```

In fact, you should specify the small caps font for each individual bold and italic shape as in

```

\setmainfont{ <upright> }[
  UprightFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <sc> } } ,
  BoldFeatures    = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf sc> } } ,
  ItalicFeatures  = { SmallCapsFont={ <it sc> } } ,
  BoldItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf it sc> } } ,
]
Roman 123 \ \textsc{Small caps 456}

```

For most modern fonts that have small caps as a font feature, this level of control isn't generally necessary.

All of the bold, italic, and small caps fonts can be loaded with different font features from the main font. See [Section 10](#) for details. When an OpenType font is selected for `SmallCapsFont`, the small caps font feature is *not* automatically enabled. In this case, users should write instead, if necessary,

```

\setmainfont{...}[
  SmallCapsFont={...},
  SmallCapsFeatures={Letters=SmallCaps},
]

```

## 6.2 Specifically choosing the NFSS family

In L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's NFSS, font families are defined with names such as 'ppl' (Palatino), 'lmr' (Latin Modern Roman), and so on, which are selected with the `\fontfamily` command:

```

\fontfamily{ppl}\selectfont

```

In `fontspec`, the family names are auto-generated based on the `fontname` of the font; for example, writing `\fontspec{Times New Roman}` for the first time would generate an internal font family name of `'TimesNewRoman(1)'`. Please note that should not rely on the name that is generated.

In certain cases it is desirable to be able to choose this internal font family name so it can be re-used elsewhere for interacting with other packages that use the  $\LaTeX$ 's font selection interface; an example might be

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

To select a font for use in this way in `fontspec` use the `NFSSFamily` feature:<sup>2</sup>

```
\newfontfamily\verbatimfont[NFSSFamily=myverbatimfont]{Inconsolata}
```

It is then possible to write commands such as:

```
\fontfamily{myverbatimfont}\selectfont
```

which is essentially the same as writing `\verbatimfont`, or to go back to the original example:

```
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

Only use this feature when necessary; the in-built font switching commands that `fontspec` generates (such as `\verbatimfont` in the example above) are recommended in all other cases.

If you don't wish to explicitly set the `NFSS` family but you would like to know what it is, an alternative mechanism for package writers is introduced as part of the `fontspec` programming interface; see the function `\fontspec_set_family:Nnn` for details ([Section 26 on page 69](#)).

### 6.3 Choosing additional `NFSS` font faces

$\LaTeX$ 's font selection scheme (`NFSS`) is more flexible than the `fontspec` interface discussed up until this point. It assigns to each font face a *family* (discussed above), a *series* such as bold or light or condensed, and a *shape* such as italic or slanted or small caps. The `fontspec` features such as `BoldFont` and so on all assign faces for the default series and shapes of the `NFSS`, but it's not uncommon to have font families that have multiple weights and shapes and so on.

If you set up a regular font family with the 'standard four' (upright, bold, italic, and bold italic) shapes and then want to use, say, a light font for a certain document element, many users will be perfectly happy to use `\newfontface\langleswitch\rangle` and use the resulting font `\langleswitch\rangle`. In other cases, however, it is more convenient or even necessary to load additional fonts using additional `NFSS` specifiers.

<pre>FontFace = {\series}{\shape} { Font = \font name , \features } FontFace = {\series}{\shape}{\font name}</pre>
--

The font thus specified will inherit the font features of the main font, with optional additional `\features` as requested. (Note that the optional `\features` argument is still

<sup>2</sup>Thanks to Luca Fascione for the example and motivation for finally implementing this feature.

surrounded with curly braces.) Multiple `FontFace` commands may be used in a single declaration to specify multiple fonts. As an example:

```
\setmainfont{font1.otf}[
  FontFace = {c}{\updefault}{ font2.otf } ,
  FontFace = {c}{m}{ Font = font3.otf , Color = red }
]
```

Writing `\fontseries{c}\selectfont` will result in `font2` being selected, which then followed by `\fontshape{m}\selectfont` will result in `font3` being selected (in red). A font face that is defined in terms of a different series but an upright shape (`\updefault`, as shown above) will attempt to find a matching small caps feature and define that face as well. Conversely, a font face defined in terms of a non-standard font shape will not.

There are some standards for choosing shape and series codes; the  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  font selection guide<sup>3</sup> lists series `m` for medium, `b` for bold, `bx` for bold extended, `sb` for semi-bold, and `c` for condensed. A far more comprehensive listing is included in Appendix A of Philipp Lehman's 'The Font Installation Guide'<sup>4</sup> covering 14 separate weights and 12 separate widths.

The `FontFace` command also interacts properly with the `SizeFeatures` command as follows: (nonsense set of font selection choices)

```
FontFace = {c}{n}{
  Font = Times ,
  SizeFeatures = {
    { Size = -10 , Font = Georgia } ,
    { Size = 10-15} , % default "Font = Times"
    { Size = 15- , Font = Cochin } ,
  },
},
```

Note that if the first `Font` feature is omitted then each size needs its own inner `Font` declaration.

### 6.3.1 An example for `\strong`

If you wanted to set up a font family to allow nesting of the `\strong` to easily access increasing font weights, you might use a declaration along the following lines:

```
\setmonofont{SourceCodePro}[
  Extension = .otf ,
  UprightFont = *-Light ,
  BoldFont = *-Regular ,
  FontFace = {k}{n}{*-Black} ,
]
\strongfontdeclare{\bfseries,\fontseries{k}\selectfont}
```

Further 'syntactic sugar' is planned to make this process somewhat easier.

<sup>3</sup>`texdoc fntguide`

<sup>4</sup>`texdoc fontinstallationguide`

## 6.4 Math(s) fonts

When `\setmainfont`, `\setsansfont` and `\setmonofont` are used in the preamble, they also define the fonts to be used in maths mode inside the `\mathrm`-type commands. This only occurs in the preamble because  $\TeX$  freezes the maths fonts after this stage of the processing. The `fontspec` package must also be loaded after any maths font packages (e.g., `euler`) to be successful. (Actually, it is *only* `euler` that is the problem.<sup>5</sup>)

Note that `fontspec` will not change the font for general mathematics; only the upright and bold shapes will be affected. To change the font used for the mathematical symbols, see either the `mathspec` package or the `unicode-math` package.

Note that you may find that loading some maths packages won't be as smooth as you expect since `fontspec` (and  $\XeTeX$  in general) breaks many of the assumptions of  $\TeX$  as to where maths characters and accents can be found. Contact me if you have troubles, but I can't guarantee to be able to fix any incompatibilities. The `Lucida` and `Euler` maths fonts should be fine; for all others keep an eye out for problems.

```
\setmathrm{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setmathsf{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setmathtt{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setboldmathrm{<font name>}[<font features>]
```

However, the default text fonts may not necessarily be the ones you wish to use when typesetting maths (especially with the use of fancy ligatures and so on). For this reason, you may optionally use the commands above (in the same way as our other `\fontspec`-like commands) to explicitly state which fonts to use inside such commands as `\mathrm`. Additionally, the `\setboldmathrm` command allows you define the font used for `\mathrm` when in bold maths mode (which is activated with, among others, `\boldmath`).

For example, if you were using `Optima` with the `Euler` maths font, you might have this in your preamble:

```
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{Optima}
\setmathrm{Optima}
\setboldmathrm[BoldFont={Optima ExtraBlack}]{Optima Bold}
```

These commands are compatible with the `unicode-math` package. Having said that, `unicode-math` also defines a more general way of defining fonts to use in maths mode, so you can ignore this subsection if you're already using that package.

## 7 Miscellaneous font selecting details

**The optional argument — from v2.4** For the first decade of `fontspec`'s life, optional font features were selected with a bracketed argument before the font name, as in:

<sup>5</sup>Speaking of `euler`, if you want to use its `[mathbf]` option, it won't work, and you'll need to put this after `fontspec` is loaded instead: `\AtBeginDocument{\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathbf{U}{eur}{b}{n}}`

```

\setmainfont[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]{myfont.otf}

```

This always looked like ugly syntax to me, because the most important detail — the name of the font — was tucked away at the end. The order of these arguments has now been reversed:

```

\setmainfont{myfont.otf}[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]

```

I hope this doesn't cause any problems.

1. Backwards compatibility has been preserved, so either input method works.
2. In fact, you can write

```
\fontspec[Ligatures=Rare]{myfont.otf}[Color=red]
```

if you really felt like it and both sets of features would be applied.

3. Following standard xparse behaviour, there must be no space before the opening bracket; writing

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}_ [Color=red]
```

will result in `[Color=red]` not being recognised an argument and therefore it will be typeset as text. When breaking over lines, write either of:

```

\fontspec{myfont.otf}%           \fontspec{myfont.otf}[
  [Color=red]                     Color=Red]

```

**Spaces** `\fontspec` and `\addfontfeatures` ignore trailing spaces as if it were a 'naked' control sequence; *e.g.*, 'M. `\fontspec{...}` N' and 'M. `\fontspec{...}`N' are the same.

## Part III

# Selecting font features

The commands discussed so far such as `\fontspec` each take an optional argument for accessing the font features of the requested font. Commands are provided to set default features to be applied for all fonts, and even to change the features that a font is presently loaded with. Different font shapes can be loaded with separate features, and different features can even be selected for different sizes that the font appears in. This part discusses these options.

## 8 Default settings

```
\defaultfontfeatures{<font features>}
```

It is sometimes useful to define font features that are applied to every subsequent font selection command. This may be defined with the `\defaultfontfeatures` command, shown in Example 5. New calls of `\defaultfontfeatures` overwrite previous ones, and defaults can be reset by calling the command with an empty argument.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[<font name>]{<font features>}
```

Default font features can be specified on a per-font and per-face basis by using the optional argument to `\defaultfontfeatures` as shown.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[tegyreadventor-regular.otf]{Color=blue}  
\setmainfont{tegyreadventor-regular.otf}% will be blue
```

Multiple fonts may be affected by using a comma separated list of font names.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[<font-switch>]{<font features>}
```

**New in v2.4.** Defaults can also be applied to symbolic families such as those created with the `\newfontfamily` command and for `\rmfamily`, `\sffamily`, and `\ttfamily`:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{Ligatures=TeX}  
\setmainfont{tegyreadventor-regular.otf}% will use standard TeX ligatures
```

---

Example 5: A demonstration of the `\defaultfontfeatures` command.

---

	<pre>\fontspec{tegyreadventor-regular.otf} Some default text 0123456789 \\ \defaultfontfeatures{   Numbers=OldStyle, Color=888888 }</pre>
Some default text 0123456789	<pre>\fontspec{tegyreadventor-regular.otf} Now grey, with old-style figures: 0123456789</pre>

---

The line above to set T<sub>E</sub>X-like ligatures is now activated by *default* in `fontspec.cfg`. To reset default font features, simply call the command with an empty argument:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{}
\setmainfont{texgyreadventor-regular.otf}% will no longer use standard TeX ligatures
```

```
\defaultfontfeatures+{<font features>}
\defaultfontfeatures+[<font name>]{<font features>}
```

**New in v2.4.** Using the + form of the command appends the *<font features>* to any already-selected defaults.

## 9 Working with the currently selected features

```
\IfFontFeatureActiveTF{<font feature>}{<>true code>}{<>false code>}
```

This command queries the currently selected font face and executes the appropriate branch based on whether the *<font feature>* as specified by `fontspec` is currently active.

For example, the following will print ‘True’:

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepageella-regular.otf}[Numbers=OldStyle]
\IfFontFeatureActiveTF{Numbers=OldStyle}{True}{False}
```

Note that there is no way for `fontspec` to know what the default features of a font will be. For example, by default the `texgyrepageella` fonts use lining numbers. But in the following example, querying for lining numbers returns false since they have not been explicitly requested:

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepageella-regular.otf}
\IfFontFeatureActiveTF{Numbers=Lining}{True}{False}
```

Please note: At time of writing this function only supports OpenType fonts; AAT/Graphite fonts under the X<sub>Y</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X engine are not supported.

```
\addfontfeatures{<font features>}
```

This command allows font features to be changed without knowing what features are currently selected or even what font is being used. A good example of this could be to add a hook to all tabular material to use monospaced numbers, as shown in Example 6. If you attempt to *change* an already-selected feature, `fontspec` will try to deactivate any features that clash with the new ones. *E.g.*, the following two invocations are mutually exclusive:

```
\addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle}...
\addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining}...
123
```

Since `Numbers=Lining` comes last, it takes precedence and deactivates the call `Numbers=OldStyle`.

`\addfontfeature` This command may also be executed under the alias `\addfontfeature`.

---

Example 6: A demonstration of the `\addfontfeatures` command.

---

```
\fontspec{texgyreadventor-regular.otf}%
[Numbers={Proportional,OldStyle}]
`In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in
13 boats. In 1923, 111 people sailed 54
miles in 56 boats.' \bigskip

`In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in 13 boats. In
1923, 111 people sailed 54 miles in 56 boats.`

Year & People & Miles & Boats \\
\hline 1842 & 999 & 75 & 13 \\
1923 & 111 & 54 & 56 \\
\end{tabular}}
```

Year	People	Miles	Boats
1842	999	75	13
1923	111	54	56

### 9.1 Priority of feature selection

Features defined with `\addfontfeatures` override features specified by `\fontspec`, which in turn override features specified by `\defaultfontfeatures`. If in doubt, whenever a new font is chosen for the first time, an entry is made in the transcript (`.log`) file displaying the font name and the features requested.

## 10 Different features for different font shapes

```
BoldFeatures={\features}
ItalicFeatures={\features}
BoldItalicFeatures={\features}
SlantedFeatures={\features}
BoldSlantedFeatures={\features}
SmallCapsFeatures={\features}
```

It is entirely possible that separate fonts in a family will require separate options; *e.g.*, Hoefler Text Italic contains various swash feature options that are completely unavailable in the upright shapes.

The font features defined at the top level of the optional `\fontspec` argument are applied to *all* shapes of the family. Using `Upright-`, `SmallCaps-`, `Bold-`, `Italic-`, and `BoldItalicFeatures`, separate font features may be defined to their respective shapes *in addition* to, and with precedence over, the ‘global’ font features. See Example 7.

Note that because most fonts include their small caps glyphs within the main font, features specified with `SmallCapsFeatures` are applied *in addition* to any other shape-specific features as defined above, and hence `SmallCapsFeatures` can be nested within `ItalicFeatures` and friends. Every combination of upright, italic, bold and small caps can thus be assigned individual features, as shown in the somewhat ludicrous Example 8.



---

Example 7: Features for, say, just italics.

---

	<pre>\fontspec{EBGaramond12-Regular.otf}%   [ItalicFont=EBGaramond12-Italic.otf] \itshape Don't Ask Victoria! \\ \addfontfeature{ItalicFeatures={Style=Swash}} Don't Ask Victoria! \\</pre>
--	---

---

---

Example 8: An example of setting the SmallCapsFeatures separately for each font shape.

---

	<pre>\fontspec{texgyretermes}[   Extension = {.otf},   UprightFont = {*-regular}, ItalicFont = {*-italic},   BoldFont = {*-bold}, BoldItalicFont = {*-bolditalic},   UprightFeatures={Color = 220022,     SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=115511}},   ItalicFeatures={Color = 2244FF,     SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=112299}},   BoldFeatures={Color = FF4422,     SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=992211}},   BoldItalicFeatures={Color = 888844,     SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=444422}}, ]</pre>
<b>Upright SMALL CAPS</b>	<pre>Upright {\scshape Small Caps} \\</pre>
<i>Italic ITALIC SMALL CAPS</i>	<pre>\itshape Italic {\scshape Italic Small Caps} \\</pre>
<b>Bold BOLD SMALL CAPS</b>	<pre>\upshape\bfseries Bold {\scshape Bold Small Caps} \\</pre>
<i><b>Bold Italic BOLD ITALIC SMALL CAPS</b></i>	<pre>\itshape Bold Italic {\scshape Bold Italic Small Caps}</pre>

---

## 11 Selecting fonts from TrueType Collections (TTC files)

TrueType Collections are multiple fonts contained within a single file. Each font within a collection must be explicitly chosen using the `FontIndex` command. Since TrueType Collections are often used to contain the italic/bold shapes in a family, `fontspec` automatically selects the italic, bold, and bold italic fontfaces from the same file. For example, to load the macOS system font Optima:

```
\setmainfont{Optima.ttc}[
  Path = /System/Library/Fonts/ ,
  UprightFeatures = {FontIndex=0} ,
  BoldFeatures = {FontIndex=1} ,
  ItalicFeatures = {FontIndex=2} ,
  BoldItalicFeatures = {FontIndex=3} ,
]
```

Support for TrueType Collections has only been tested in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX, but should also work with an up-to-date version of LuaTeX and the `luaotfload` package.

## 12 Different features for different font sizes

```
SizeFeatures = {
  ...
  { Size = <size range>, <font features> },
  { Size = <size range>, Font = <font name>, <font features> },
  ...
}
```

The `SizeFeature` feature is a little more complicated than the previous features discussed. It allows different fonts and different font features to be selected for a given font family as the point size varies.

It takes a comma separated list of braced, comma separated lists of features for each size range. Each sub-list must contain the `Size` option to declare the size range, and optionally `Font` to change the font based on size. Other (regular) `fontspec` features that are added are used on top of the font features that would be used anyway. A demonstration to clarify these details is shown in [Example 9](#). A less trivial example is shown in the context of optical font sizes in [Section 13.6 on page 31](#).

To be precise, the `Size` sub-feature accepts arguments in the form shown in [Table 1 on the following page](#). Braces around the size range are optional. For an exact font size (`Size=X`) font sizes chosen near that size will ‘snap’. For example, for size definitions at exactly 11pt and 14pt, if a 12pt font is requested *actually* the 11pt font will be selected. This is a remnant of the past when fonts were designed in metal (at obviously rigid sizes) and later when bitmap fonts were similarly designed for fixed sizes.

If additional features are only required for a single size, the other sizes must still be specified. As in:

---

Example 9: An example of specifying different font features for different sizes of font with `SizeFeatures`.

---

```

\fontspec{texgyrechorus-mediumitalic.otf}[
  SizeFeatures={
    {Size={-8}, Font=tegyrebonum-italic.otf, Color=AA0000},
    {Size={8-14}, Color=00AA00},
    {Size={14-}, Color=0000AA} ]
Small
Normal size
Large
{\scriptsize Small\par} Normal size\par {\Large Large\par}

```

---

```

SizeFeatures={
  {Size=-10,Numbers=Uppercase},
  {Size=10-}

```

Otherwise, the font sizes greater than 10 won't be defined at all!

**Interaction with other features** For `SizeFeatures` to work with `ItalicFeatures`, `BoldFeatures`, etc., and `SmallCapsFeatures`, a strict heirarchy is required:

```

UprightFeatures =
{
  SizeFeatures =
  {
    {
      Size = -10,
      Font = ..., % if necessary
      SmallCapsFeatures = {...},
      ... % other features for this size range
    },
    ... % other size ranges
  }
}

```

Suggestions on simplifying this interface welcome.

## 13 Font independent options

Features introduced in this section may be used with any font.

Table 1: Syntax for specifying the size to apply custom font features.

Input	Font size, $s$
<code>Size = X-</code>	$s \geq X$
<code>Size = -Y</code>	$s < Y$
<code>Size = X-Y</code>	$X \leq s < Y$
<code>Size = X</code>	$s = X$

## 13.1 Colour

Color (or Colour) uses font specifications to set the colour of the text. You should think of this as the literal glyphs of the font being coloured in a certain way. Notably, this mechanism is different to that of the `color`/`xcolor`/`hyperref`/etc. packages, and in fact using `fontspec` commands to set colour will prevent your text from changing colour using those packages at all! For example, if you set the colour in a `\setmainfont` command, `\color{...}` and related commands, including hyperlink colouring, will no longer have any effect on text in this font.) Therefore, `fontspec`'s colour commands are best used to set explicit colours in specific situations, and the `xcolor` package is recommended for more general colour functionality.

The colour is defined as a triplet of two-digit Hex RGB values, with optionally another value for the transparency (where `00` is completely transparent and `FF` is opaque.) Transparency is supported by Lua $\TeX$ ; X $\TeX$  with the `xdvipdfmx` driver does not support this feature.

If you load the `xcolor` package, you may use any named colour instead of writing the colours in hexadecimal.

```
\usepackage{xcolor}
...
\fontspec[Color=red]{Verdana} ...
\definecolor{Foo}{rgb}{0.3,0.4,0.5}
\fontspec[Color=Foo]{Verdana} ...
```

The `color` package is *not* supported; use `xcolor` instead.

You may specify the transparency with a named colour using the `Opacity` feature which takes a decimal from zero to one corresponding to transparent to opaque respectively:

```
\fontspec[Color=red,Opacity=0.7]{Verdana} ...
```

It is still possible to specify a colour in six-char hexadecimal form while defining opacity in this way, if you like.

## 13.2 Scale

<pre>Scale = &lt;number&gt; Scale = MatchLowercase Scale = MatchUppercase</pre>
---

---

Example 10: Selecting colour with transparency.

---



```
\fontsize{48}{48}
\fontspec{texgyrebonum-bold.otf}
{\addfontfeature{Color=FF000099}W}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=0000FF99}S}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=DDBB2299}P}\kern-0.5ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=00BB3399}R}
```

---

In its explicit form, `Scale` takes a single numeric argument for linearly scaling the font, as demonstrated in Example 1. It is now possible to measure the correct dimensions of the fonts loaded and calculate values to scale them automatically.

As well as a numerical argument, the `Scale` feature also accepts options `MatchLowercase` and `MatchUppercase`, which will scale the font being selected to match the current default roman font to either the height of the lowercase or uppercase letters, respectively; these features are shown in Example 11.

The amount of scaling used in each instance is reported in the `.log` file. Since there is some subjectivity about the exact scaling to be used, these values should be used to fine-tune the results.

Note that when `Scale=MatchLowercase` is used with `\setmainfont`, the new ‘main’ font of the document will be scaled to match the old default. This may be undesirable in some cases, so to achieve ‘natural’ scaling for the main font but automatically scale all other fonts selected, you may write

```
\defaultfontfeatures{ Scale = MatchLowercase }
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily]{ Scale = 1}
```

One or both of these lines may be placed into a local `fontspec.cfg` file (see Section 3.3 on page 7) for this behaviour to be effected in your own documents automatically. (Also see Section 8 on page 22 for more information on setting font defaults.)

### 13.3 Interword space

While the space between words can be varied on an individual basis with the  $\TeX$  primitive `\spaceskip` command, it is more convenient to specify this information when the font is first defined.

The space in between words in a paragraph will be chosen automatically, and generally will not need to be adjusted. For those times when the precise details are important, the `WordSpace` feature is provided, which takes either a single scaling factor to scale the default value, or a triplet of comma-separated values to scale the nominal value, the stretch, and the shrink of the interword space by, respectively. (`WordSpace={x}` is the same as `WordSpace={x,x,x}`.)

Note that  $\TeX$ 's optimisations in how it loads fonts means that you cannot use this feature in `\addfontfeatures`.

---

Example 11: Automatically calculated scale values.

---

<p>The perfect match is hard to find. LOGOFONT</p>	<pre>\setmainfont{Georgia} \newfontfamily\lc[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Verdana} The perfect match {\lc is hard to find.}\ \newfontfamily\uc[Scale=MatchUppercase]{Arial} LOGO \uc FONT</pre>
--	--

---

---

Example 12: Scaling the default interword space. An exaggerated value has been chosen to emphasise the effects here.

---

<p>Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.</p> <p>Sometextforourexampletotakeupsomespace,andtodemonstratethedefaultinterwordspace.</p>	<pre> \fontspec{texgyretermes-regular.otf} Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space. \bigskip \fontspec{texgyretermes-regular.otf}% [WordSpace = 0.3] Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space. </pre>
---	--

---

### 13.4 Post-punctuation space

If `\frenchspacing` is *not* in effect,  $\TeX$  will allow extra space after some punctuation in its goal of justifying the lines of text. Generally, this is considered old-fashioned, but occasionally in small amounts the effect can be justified, pardon the pun.

The `PunctuationSpace` feature takes a scaling factor by which to adjust the nominal value chosen for the font; this is demonstrated in Example 13. Note that `PunctuationSpace=0` is *not* equivalent to `\frenchspacing`, although the difference will only be apparent when a line of text is under-full.

Note that  $\TeX$ 's optimisations in how it loads fonts means that you cannot use this feature in `\addfontfeatures`.

### 13.5 The hyphenation character

The letter used for hyphenation may be chosen with the `HyphenChar` feature. With one exception (`HyphenChar = None`), this is a  $\Xe\TeX$ -only feature since  $\text{Lua}\TeX$  cannot set the hyphenation character on a per-font basis; see its `\prehyphenchar` primitive for further details.

`HyphenChar` takes three types of input, which are chosen according to some simple rules. If the input is the string `None`, then hyphenation is suppressed for this font. If

---

Example 13: Scaling the default post-punctuation space.

---

<p>Letters, Words. Sentences.</p> <p>Letters, Words. Sentences.</p> <p>Letters, Words. Sentences.</p>	<pre> \nonfrenchspacing \fontspec{texgyreschola-regular.otf} Letters, Words. Sentences. \par \fontspec{texgyreschola-regular.otf}[PunctuationSpace=2] Letters, Words. Sentences. \par \fontspec{texgyreschola-regular.otf}[PunctuationSpace=0] Letters, Words. Sentences. </pre>
---	--

---

the input is a single character, then this character is used. Finally, if the input is longer than a single character it must be the UTF-8 slot number of the hyphen character you desire.

This package redefines L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's `\-` macro such that it adjusts along with the above changes.

Note that T<sub>E</sub>X's optimisations in how it loads fonts means that you cannot use this feature in `\addfontfeatures`.

## 13.6 Optical font sizes

Optically scaled fonts thicken out as the font size decreases in order to make the glyph shapes more robust (less prone to losing detail), which improves legibility. Conversely, at large optical sizes the serifs and other small details may be more delicately rendered.

OpenType fonts with optical scaling will exist in several discrete sizes, and these will be selected by X<sub>Y</sub>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and Lua<sub>T</sub><sub>E</sub>X *automatically* determined by the current font size as in Example 15, in which we've scaled down some large text in order to be able to compare the difference for equivalent font sizes.

The `OpticalSize` feature may be used to specify a different optical size. With `OpticalSize` set to zero, no optical size font substitution is performed, as shown in Example 16.

The `SizeFeatures` feature (Section 12 on page 26) can be used to specify exactly which optical sizes will be used for ranges of font size. For example, something like:

```
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman}[
  UprightFeatures = { SizeFeatures = {
    {Size=-10,    OpticalSize=8 },
    {Size= 10-14, OpticalSize=10},
    {Size= 14-18, OpticalSize=14},
    {Size= 18-,  OpticalSize=18}}}
]
```

## 13.7 Font transformations

In rare situations users may want to mechanically distort the shapes of the glyphs in the current font such as shown in Example 17. Please don't overuse these features; they are *not* a good alternative to having the real shapes.

---

Example 14: Explicitly choosing the hyphenation character.

---

EXAMPLE HYPHENATION
------------------------

```
\def\text{\fbox{\parbox{1.55cm}{%
  EXAMPLE HYPHENATION%
}}}\quad\quad\quad\null\par\bigskip}
```

EXAMPLE HYPHEN+ ATION
-----------------------------

```
\fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}[HyphenChar=None]
\text
\fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}[HyphenChar={+}]
\text
```

---

---

Example 15: A demonstration of automatic optical size selection.

---

	<code>\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman}</code>	
Automatic optical size	Automatic optical size	\\
Automatic optical size	<code>\scalebox{0.4}{\Huge</code>	
	Automatic optical size}	

---



---

Example 16: Optical size substitution is suppressed when set to zero.

---

	<code>\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 5 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]</code>	
	Latin Modern optical sizes	\\
	<code>\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 8 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]</code>	
Latin Modern optical sizes	Latin Modern optical sizes	\\
Latin Modern optical sizes	<code>\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 12 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]</code>	
Latin Modern optical sizes	Latin Modern optical sizes	\\
Latin Modern optical sizes	<code>\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 17 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]</code>	
	Latin Modern optical sizes	

---



---

Example 17: Artificial font transformations.

---

	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento.otf} \emph{ABCxyz} \quad</code>	
	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento.otf}[FakeSlant=0.2] ABCxyz</code>	
	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento.otf} ABCxyz \quad</code>	
ABCxyz	<i>ABCxyz</i>	
ABCxyz	<i>ABCxyz</i>	
ABCxyz	<b>ABCxyz</b>	
	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento.otf} \textbf{ABCxyz} \quad</code>	
	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento.otf}[FakeBold=1.5] ABCxyz</code>	

---



If values are omitted, their defaults are as shown above.

If you want the bold shape to be faked automatically, or the italic shape to be slanted automatically, use the `AutoFakeBold` and `AutoFakeSlant` features. For example, the following two invocations are equivalent:

```
\fontspec[AutoFakeBold=1.5]{Charis SIL}
\fontspec[BoldFeatures={FakeBold=1.5}]{Charis SIL}
```

If both of the `AutoFake...` features are used, then the bold italic font will also be faked.

The `FakeBold` and `AutoFakeBold` features are only available with the  $X_{\text{T}}\text{E}_{\text{X}}$  engine and will be ignored in  $\text{LuaT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ .

### 13.8 Letter spacing

Letter spacing, or tracking, is the term given to adding (or subtracting) a small amount of horizontal space in between adjacent characters. It is specified with the `LetterSpace`, which takes a numeric argument, shown in Example 18.

The letter spacing parameter is a normalised additive factor (not a scaling factor); it is defined as a percentage of the font size. That is, for a 10 pt font, a letter spacing parameter of ‘1.0’ will add 0.1 pt between each letter.

This functionality is not generally used for lowercase text in modern typesetting but does have historic precedent in a variety of situations. In particular, small amounts of letter spacing can be very useful, when setting small caps or all caps titles. Also see the `OpenType Uppercase` option of the `Letters` feature (Section 15.2 on page 36).

---

Example 18: The `LetterSpace` feature.

---

	<code>\fontspec{Didot}</code>
	<code>\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=0.0}</code>
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT	USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT \\
	<code>\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=2.0}</code>
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT	USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

---

## Part IV

# OpenType

## 14 Introduction

OpenType fonts (and other ‘smart’ font technologies such as AAT and Graphite) can change the appearance of text in many different ways. These changes are referred to as font features. When the user applies a feature — for example, small capitals — to a run of text, the code inside the font makes appropriate substitutions and small capitals appear in place of lowercase letters. However, the use of such features does not affect the underlying text. In our small caps example, the lowercase letters are still stored in the document; only the appearance has been changed by the OpenType feature. This makes it possible to search and copy text without difficulty. If the user selected a different font that does not support small caps, the ‘plain’ lowercase letters would appear instead.

Some OpenType features are required to support particular scripts, and these features are often applied automatically. The Indic scripts, for example, often require that characters be reshaped and reordered after they are typed by the user, in order to display them in the traditional ways that readers expect. Other features can be applied to support a particular language. The Junicode font for medievalists uses by default the Old English shape of the letter thorn, while in modern Icelandic thorn has a more rounded shape. If a user tags some text as being in Icelandic, Junicode will automatically change to the Icelandic shape through an OpenType feature that localises the shapes of letters.

There are a large group of OpenType features, designed to support high quality typography a multitude of languages and writing scripts. Examples of some font features have already been shown in previous sections; the complete set of OpenType font features supported by fontspec is described below in [Section 15](#).

The OpenType specification provides four-letter codes (e.g., `smcp` for small capitals) for each feature. The four-letter codes are given below along with the fontspec names for various features, for the benefit of people who are already familiar with OpenType. You can ignore the codes if they don’t mean anything to you.

### 14.1 How to select font features

Font features are selected by a series of  $\langle feature \rangle = \langle option \rangle$  selections. Features are (usually) grouped logically; for example, all font features relating to ligatures are accessed by writing `Ligatures={...}` with the appropriate argument(s), which could be `TeX`, `Rare`, etc., as shown below in [15.1.1](#).

Multiple options may be given to any feature that accepts non-numerical input, although doing so will not always work. Some options will override others in generally obvious ways; `Numbers={OldStyle,Lining}` doesn’t make much sense because the two options are mutually exclusive, and  $\text{X}\_{\text{T}}\text{E}\_{\text{X}}$  will simply use the last option that is specified (in this case using `Lining` over `OldStyle`).

If a feature or an option is requested that the font does not have, a warning is given in the console output. As mentioned in [Section 3.4 on page 8](#) these warnings can be

suppressed by selecting the [quiet] package option.

## 14.2 How do I know what font features are supported by my fonts?

Although I've long desired to have a feature within fontspec to display the OpenType features within a font, it's never been high on my priority list. One reason for that is the existence of the document `opentype-info.tex`, which is available on CTAN or typing `kpsewhich opentype-info.tex` in a Terminal window. Make a copy of this file and place it somewhere convenient. Then open it in your regular TeX editor and change the font name to the font you'd like to query; after running through plain XeTeX, the output PDF will look something like this:

### OpenType Layout features found in '[Asana-Math.otf]'

```
script = 'DFLT'  
  language = <default>  
    features = 'onum' 'salt' 'kern'  
script = 'cher'  
  language = <default>  
    features = 'onum' 'salt' 'kern'  
script = 'grek'  
  language = <default>  
    features = 'onum' 'salt' 'kern'  
script = 'latn'  
  language = <default>  
    features = 'onum' 'salt' 'kern'  
script = 'math'  
  language = <default>  
    features = 'dtls' 'onum' 'salt' 'ssty' 'kern'
```

I intentionally picked a font that by design needs few font features; 'regular' text fonts such as Latin Modern Roman contain many more, and I didn't want to clutter up the document too much. You'll then need to cross-check the OpenType feature tags with the 'logical' names used by fontspec.

**otfinfo** Alternatively, and more simply, you can use the command line tool `otfinfo`, which is distributed with TeXLive. Simply type in a Terminal window, say:

```
otfinfo -f `kpsewhich lmromandunh10-oblique.otf`
```

which results in:

aalt	Access All Alternates
csp	Capital Spacing
dlig	Discretionary Ligatures
frac	Fractions

kern	Kerning
liga	Standard Ligatures
lnum	Lining Figures
onum	Oldstyle Figures
pnum	Proportional Figures
size	Optical Size
tnum	Tabular Figures
zero	Slashed Zero

## 15 OpenType font features

There are a finite set of OpenType font features, and `fontspec` provides an interface to around half of them. Full documentation will be presented in the following sections, including how to enable and disable individual features, and how they interact.

A brief reference is provided ([Table 2 on the following page](#)) but note that this is an incomplete listing — only the ‘enable’ keys are shown, and where alternative interfaces are provided for convenience only the first is shown. (E.g., `Numbers=OldStyle` is the same as `Numbers=Lowercase`.)

For completeness, the complete list of OpenType features *not* provided with a `fontspec` interface is shown in [Table 3 on page 38](#). Features omitted are partially by design and partially by oversight; for example, the `aaalt` feature is largely useless in  $\TeX$  since it is designed for providing a `textscgui` interface for selecting ‘all alternates’ of a glyph. Others, such as optical bounds for example, simply haven’t yet been considered due to a lack of fonts available for testing. Suggestions welcome for how/where to add these missing features to the package.

### 15.1 Tag-based features

#### 15.1.1 Ligatures

`Ligatures` refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or aesthetic reasons. The list of options, of which multiple may be selected at one time, is shown in [Table 4](#). A demonstration with the Linux Libertine fonts<sup>6</sup> is shown in [Example 19](#).

Note the additional features accessed with `Ligatures=TeX`. These are not actually real OpenType features, but additions provided by `luaotfload` (i.e.,  $\text{Lua}\TeX$  only) to emulate  $\TeX$ ’s behaviour for ASCII input of curly quotes and punctuation. In  $\text{X}\TeX$  this is achieved with the `Mapping` feature (see [Section 20.1 on page 61](#)) but for consistency `Ligatures=TeX` will perform the same function as `Mapping=tex-text`.

### 15.2 Letters

The `Letters` feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. OpenType fonts may contain the following options: `Uppercase`, `SmallCaps`, `PetiteCaps`, `UppercaseSmallCaps`, `UppercasePetiteCaps`, and `Unicase`.

<sup>6</sup><http://www.linuxlibertine.org/>

Table 2: Summary of OpenType features in fontspec, alphabetic by feature tag.

ABVM	Diacritics = AboveBase	<i>Above-base Mark Positioning</i>	NUMR	VerticalPosition = Numerator	<i>Numerators</i>
AFRC	Fractions = Alternate	<i>Alternative Fractions</i>	ONUM	Numbers = Lowercase	<i>Oldstyle Figures</i>
BLWM	Diacritics = BelowBase	<i>Below-base Mark Positioning</i>	ORDN	VerticalPosition = Ordinal	<i>Ordinals</i>
CALT	Contextuals = Alternate	<i>Contextual Alternates</i>	ORNM	Ornament = <i>N</i>	<i>Ornaments</i>
CASE	Letters = Uppercase	<i>Case-Sensitive Forms</i>	PALT	CharacterWidth = AlternateProportional	<i>Proportional Alternate Widths</i>
CLIG	Ligatures = Contextual	<i>Contextual Ligatures</i>	PCAP	Letters = PetiteCaps	<i>Petite Capitals</i>
CPSP	Kerning = Uppercase	<i>Capital Spacing</i>	PKNA	Style = ProportionalKana	<i>Proportional Kana</i>
CSWH	Contextuals = Swash	<i>Contextual Swash</i>	PNUM	Numbers = Proportional	<i>Proportional Figures</i>
CVNN	CharacterVariant = <i>N:M</i>	<i>Character Variant N</i>	PWID	CharacterWidth = Proportional	<i>Proportional Widths</i>
C2PC	Letters = UppercasePetiteCaps	<i>Petite Capitals From Capitals</i>	QWID	CharacterWidth = Quarter	<i>Quarter Widths</i>
C2SC	Letters = UppercaseSmallCaps	<i>Small Capitals From Capitals</i>	RAND	Letters = Random	<i>Randomize</i>
DLIG	Ligatures = Rare	<i>Discretionary Ligatures</i>	RLIG	Ligatures = Required	<i>Required Ligatures</i>
DNOM	VerticalPosition = Denominator	<i>Denominators</i>	RUBY	Style = Ruby	<i>Ruby Notation Forms</i>
EXPT	CJKShape = Expert	<i>Expert Forms</i>	SALT	Alternate = <i>N</i>	<i>Stylistic Alternates</i>
FALT	Contextuals = LineFinal	<i>Final Glyph on Line Alternates</i>	SINF	VerticalPosition = ScientificInferior	<i>Scientific Inferiors</i>
FINA	Contextuals = WordFinal	<i>Terminal Forms</i>	SMCP	Letters = SmallCaps	<i>Small Capitals</i>
FRAC	Fractions = On	<i>Fractions</i>	SMPL	CJKShape = Simplified	<i>Simplified Forms</i>
FWID	CharacterWidth = Full	<i>Full Widths</i>	SSNN	StylisticSet = <i>N</i>	<i>Stylistic Set N</i>
HALT	CharacterWidth = AlternateHalf	<i>Alternate Half Widths</i>	SSTY	Style = MathScript	<i>Math script style alternates</i>
HIST	Style = Historic	<i>Historical Forms</i>	SUBS	VerticalPosition = Inferior	<i>Subscript</i>
HKNA	Style = HorizontalKana	<i>Horizontal Kana Alternates</i>	SUPS	VerticalPosition = Superior	<i>Superscript</i>
HLIG	Ligatures = Historic	<i>Historical Ligatures</i>	SWSH	Style = Swash	<i>Swash</i>
HWID	CharacterWidth = Half	<i>Half Widths</i>	TITL	Style = TitlingCaps	<i>Titling</i>
INIT	Contextuals = WordInitial	<i>Initial Forms</i>	TNUM	Numbers = Monospaced	<i>Tabular Figures</i>
ITAL	Style = Italic	<i>Italics</i>	TRAD	CJKShape = Traditional	<i>Traditional Forms</i>
JP78	CJKShape = JIS1978	<i>JIS78 Forms</i>	TWID	CharacterWidth = Third	<i>Third Widths</i>
JP83	CJKShape = JIS1983	<i>JIS83 Forms</i>	UNIC	Letters = Unicase	<i>Unicase</i>
JP90	CJKShape = JIS1990	<i>JIS90 Forms</i>	VALT	Vertical = AlternateMetrics	<i>Alternate Vertical Metrics</i>
JP04	CJKShape = JIS2004	<i>JIS2004 Forms</i>	VERT	Vertical = Alternates	<i>Vertical Writing</i>
KERN	Kerning = On	<i>Kerning</i>	VHAL	Vertical = HalfMetrics	<i>Alternate Vertical Half Metrics</i>
LIGA	Ligatures = Common	<i>Standard Ligatures</i>	VKNA	Style = VerticalKana	<i>Vertical Kana Alternates</i>
LNUM	Numbers = Uppercase	<i>Lining Figures</i>	VKRN	Vertical = Kerning	<i>Vertical Kerning</i>
MARK	Diacritics = MarkToBase	<i>Mark Positioning</i>	VPAL	Vertical = ProportionalMetrics	<i>Proportional Alternate Vertical Metrics</i>
MEDI	Contextuals = Inner	<i>Medial Forms</i>	VRT2	Vertical = RotatedGlyphs	<i>Vertical Alternates and Rotation</i>
MKMK	Diacritics = MarkToMark	<i>Mark to Mark Positioning</i>	VRTR	Vertical = AlternatesForRotation	<i>Vertical Alternates for Rotation</i>
NALT	Annotation = <i>N</i>	<i>Alternate Annotation Forms</i>	ZERO	Numbers = SlashedZero	<i>Slashed Zero</i>
NLCK	CJKShape = NLC	<i>NLC Kanji Forms</i>			

Table 3: List of *unsupported* OpenType features.

AALT	<i>Access All Alternates</i>	HNGL	<i>Hangul</i>	PSTS	<i>Post-base Substitutions</i>
ABVF	<i>Above-base Forms</i>	HOJO	<i>Hojo Kanji Forms</i>	RCLT	<i>Required Contextual Alternates</i>
ABVS	<i>Above-base Substitutions</i>	ISOL	<i>Isolated Forms</i>	RKRF	<i>Rakar Forms</i>
AKHN	<i>Akhands</i>	JALT	<i>Justification Alternates</i>	RPHE	<i>Reph Forms</i>
BLWF	<i>Below-base Forms</i>	LFBD	<i>Left Bounds</i>	RTBD	<i>Right Bounds</i>
BLWS	<i>Below-base Substitutions</i>	LJMO	<i>Leading Jamo Forms</i>	RTLAL	<i>Right-to-left alternates</i>
CCMP	<i>Glyph Composition / Decomposition</i>	LOCL	<i>Localized Forms</i>	RTLML	<i>Right-to-left mirrored forms</i>
CFAR	<i>Conjunct Form After Ro</i>	LTRA	<i>Left-to-right alternates</i>	RVRN	<i>Required Variation Alternates</i>
CJCT	<i>Conjunct Forms</i>	LTRM	<i>Left-to-right mirrored forms</i>	SIZE	<i>Optical size</i>
CPCT	<i>Centered CJK Punctuation</i>	MED2	<i>Medial Forms #2</i>	STCH	<i>Stretching Glyph Decomposition</i>
CURS	<i>Cursive Positioning</i>	MGRK	<i>Mathematical Greek</i>	TJMO	<i>Trailing Jamo Forms</i>
DIST	<i>Distances</i>	MSET	<i>Mark Positioning via Substitution</i>	TNAM	<i>Traditional Name Forms</i>
DTLS	<i>Dotless Forms</i>	NUKT	<i>Nukta Forms</i>	VATU	<i>Vattu Variants</i>
FIN2	<i>Terminal Forms #2</i>	OPBD	<i>Optical Bounds</i>	VJMO	<i>Vowel Jamo Forms</i>
FIN3	<i>Terminal Forms #3</i>	PREF	<i>Pre-Base Forms</i>		
FLAC	<i>Flattened accent forms</i>	PRES	<i>Pre-base Substitutions</i>		
HALF	<i>Half Forms</i>	PSTF	<i>Post-base Forms</i>		
HALN	<i>Halant Forms</i>				

Table 4: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Ligatures’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Ligatures =	Required	<code>r<sub>lig</sub></code> †
	Common	<code>l<sub>iga</sub></code> †
	Contextual	<code>c<sub>lig</sub></code> †
	Rare/Discretionary	<code>d<sub>lig</sub></code> †
	Historic	<code>h<sub>lig</sub></code> †
	TeX	<code>t<sub>lig</sub></code> †
ResetAll		

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

---

Example 19: An example of the Ligatures feature.

---

strict → strict  
wurtzite → wurtzite  
firefly → firefly

```
\def\test#1#2{%  
  #2 $\to$ {\addfontfeature{#1} #2}\}  
\fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}  
\test{Ligatures=Historic}{strict}  
\test{Ligatures=Rare}{wurtzite}  
\test{Ligatures=NoCommon}{firefly}
```

---

Table 5: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Letters’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Letters	= Uppercase	case †
	SmallCaps	smcp †
	PetiteCaps	pcap †
	UppercaseSmallCaps	c2sc †
	UppercasePetiteCaps	c2pc †
	Unicase	unic †
	ResetAll	

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

Petite caps are smaller than small caps. `SmallCaps` and `PetiteCaps` turn lowercase letters into the smaller caps letters, whereas the `Uppercase` . . . options turn the *capital* letters into the smaller caps (good, *e.g.*, for applying to already uppercase acronyms like ‘NASA’). This difference is shown in Example 20. ‘Unicase’ is a weird hybrid of upper and lower case letters.

Note that the `Uppercase` option will (probably) not actually map letters to uppercase.<sup>7</sup> It is designed to select various uppercase forms for glyphs such as accents and dashes, such as shown in Example 21; note the raised position of the hyphen to better match the surrounding letters.

The `Kerning` feature also contains an `Uppercase` option, which adds a small amount of spacing in between letters (see Section 15.5 on page 45).

### 15.2.1 Numbers

The `Numbers` feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font, accepting options shown in Table 6.

The synonyms `Uppercase` and `Lowercase` are equivalent to `Lining` and `OldStyle`, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 9 on page 23. The `Monospaced` option is useful for tabular material when digits need to be vertically aligned.

The `SlashedZero` option replaces the default zero with a slashed version to prevent confusion with an uppercase ‘O’, shown in Example 22.

The `Arabic` option (with tag `anum`) maps regular numerals to their Arabic script or Persian equivalents based on the current `Language` setting (see Section 15.9 on page 50). This option is based on a LuaTeX feature of the `luaotfload` package, not an OpenType feature. (Thus, this feature is unavailable in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX.)

### 15.2.2 Contextuals

This feature refers to substitutions of glyphs that vary ‘contextually’ by their relative position in a word or string of characters; features such as contextual swashes are accessed via the options shown in Table 7.

Historic forms are accessed in OpenType fonts via the feature `Style=Historic`; this is generally *not* contextual in OpenType, which is why it is not included in this feature.

---

Example 20: Small caps from lowercase or uppercase letters.

---

	<code>\fontspec{texgyreadventor-regular.otf}[Letters=SmallCaps]</code>
	THIS SENTENCE no verb                      \\\
THIS SENTENCE NO VERB	<code>\fontspec{texgyreadventor-regular.otf}[Letters=UppercaseSmallCaps]</code>
THIS SENTENCE NO verb	THIS SENTENCE no verb

---



---

Example 21: An example of the Uppercase option of the Letters feature.

---

	<code>\fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}</code>
UPPER-CASE example	<code>UPPER-CASE example \</code>
UPPER-CASE example	<code>\addfontfeature{Letters=Uppercase}</code>
	<code>UPPER-CASE example</code>

---

Table 6: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Numbers’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Numbers =	Uppercase	<code>lnum</code> †
	Lowercase	<code>onum</code> †
	Lining	<code>lnum</code> †
	OldStyle	<code>onum</code> †
	Proportional	<code>pnum</code> †
	Monospaced	<code>tnum</code> †
	SlashedZero	<code>zero</code> †
	Arabic	<code>anum</code> †
ResetAll		

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

---

Example 22: The effect of the SlashedZero option.

---

	<code>\fontspec[Numbers=Lining]{texgyrebonum-regular.otf}</code>
	<code>0123456789</code>
0123456789	<code>\fontspec[Numbers=SlashedZero]{texgyrebonum-regular.otf}</code>
0123456789	<code>0123456789</code>

---

Table 7: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Contextuals’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Contextuals =	Swash	<code>csw</code> †
	Alternate	<code>calt</code> †
	WordInitial	<code>init</code> †
	WordFinal	<code>fin</code> †
	LineFinal	<code>falt</code> †
	Inner	<code>medi</code> †
ResetAll		

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

Table 8: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘VerticalPosition’.

Feature	Option	Tag
VerticalPosition =	Superior	sup <sub>s</sub> †
	Inferior	sub <sub>s</sub> †
	Numerator	num <sub>r</sub> †
	Denominator	dnom †
	ScientificInferior	sinf †
	Ordinal	ord <sub>n</sub> †
ResetAll		

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

### 15.2.3 Vertical Position

The `VerticalPosition` feature is used to access things like subscript (`Inferior`) and superscript (`Superior`) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The `Ordinal` option will only raise characters that are used in some languages directly after a number. The `ScientificInferior` feature will move glyphs further below the baseline than the `Inferior` feature. These are shown in Example 23

`Numerator` and `Denominator` should only be used for creating arbitrary fractions (see next section).

The `realscripts` package (which is also loaded by `xltextra` for  $X_{\text{L}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ ) redefines the `\textsubscript` and `\textsuperscript` commands to use the above font features automatically, including for use in footnote labels. If this is the only feature of `xltextra` you wish to use, consider loading `realscripts` on its own instead.

### 15.2.4 Fractions

For OpenType fonts use a regular text slash to create fractions, but the `Fraction` feature must be explicitly activated. Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the `Alternate` feature. These are both shown in Example 24.

<sup>7</sup>If you want automatic uppercase letters, look to  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ 's `\MakeUppercase` command.

Example 23: The `VerticalPosition` feature.

	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Superior]</code>
Superior: 1234567890	Superior: 1234567890
	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Numerator]</code>
Numerator: 12345	Numerator: 12345
	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Denominator]</code>
Denominator: 12345	Denominator: 12345
	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=ScientificInferior]</code>
Scientific Inferior: 12345	Scientific Inferior: 12345

Table 9: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Fractions’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Fractions	= On	+frac
	Off	-frac
	Reset	
	Alternate	afrc †
	ResetAll	

† These feature options can be disabled with `. .Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `. .Reset`.

Example 24: The Fractions feature.

		<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro W4}</code>
		<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\\</code>
$1/2$	$1/4$	$5/6$
$13579/24680$		
		<code>\addfontfeature{Fractions=On}</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{6}$
$13579/24680$		
		<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\\</code>
		<code>\addfontfeature{Fractions=Alternate}</code>
		<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\\</code>

### 15.3 Style

‘Ruby’ refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations. For fonts with multiple `salt` OpenType features, use the `fontspec Alternate` feature instead.

Example 25 and Example 26 both contain glyph substitutions with similar characteristics. Note the occasional inconsistency with which font features are labelled; a long-tailed ‘Q’ could turn up anywhere!

In other features, larger breadths of changes can be seen, covering the style of an entire alphabet. See Example 27 and Example 28; in the latter, the `Italic` option affects the Latin text and the `Ruby` option the Japanese.

Note the difference here between the default and the horizontal style kana in Example 29: the horizontal style is slightly wider.

Example 25: Example of the `Alternate` option of the `Style` feature.

	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento.otf}</code>
M Q W	<code>M Q W \\\</code>
M Q W	<code>\addfontfeature{Style=Alternate}</code>
M Q W	<code>M Q W</code>

Table 10: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Style’.

Feature Option	Tag
Style = Alternate	salt †
Italic	ital †
Ruby	ruby †
Swash	swsh †
Cursive	curs †
Historic	hist †
TitlingCaps	titl †
HorizontalKana	hkna †
VerticalKana	vkna †
ResetAll	

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

Example 26: Example of the `Historic` option of the `Style` feature.

MQZ	<code>\fontspec{Adobe Jenson Pro}</code> M Q Z
MQZ	<code>\addfontfeature{Style=Historic}</code> M Q Z

Example 27: Example of the `TitlingCaps` option of the `Style` feature.

TITLING CAPS	<code>\fontspec{Adobe Garamond Pro}</code> TITLING CAPS
TITLING CAPS	<code>\addfontfeature{Style=TitlingCaps}</code> TITLING CAPS

Example 28: Example of the `Italic` and `Ruby` options of the `Style` feature.

Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code> Latin \kana
<i>Latin</i> ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<code>\addfontfeature{Style={Italic, Ruby}}</code> Latin \kana

Example 29: Example of the `HorizontalKana` and `VerticalKana` options of the `Style` feature.

ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code> \kana
ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<code>\addfontfeature{Style=HorizontalKana}</code> \kana }
ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<code>\addfontfeature{Style=VerticalKana}</code> \kana }

## 15.4 Diacritics

Specifies how combining diacritics should be placed. These will usually be controlled automatically according to the Script setting.

## 15.5 Kerning

Specifies how inter-glyph spacing should behave. Well-made fonts include information for how differing amounts of space should be inserted between separate character pairs. This kerning space is inserted automatically but in rare circumstances you may wish to turn it off.

As briefly mentioned previously at the end of [Section 15.2 on page 36](#), the `Uppercase` option will add a small amount of tracking between uppercase letters, seen in [Example 30](#), which uses the Romande fonts<sup>8</sup> (thanks to Clea F. Rees for the suggestion). The `Uppercase` option acts separately to the regular kerning controlled by the `On/Off` options.

## 15.6 Character width

Many Asian fonts are equipped with variously spaced characters for shoe-horning into their generally monospaced text. These are accessed through the `CharacterWidth` feature.

Japanese alphabetic glyphs (in Hiragana or Katakana) may be typeset proportionally, to better fit horizontal measures, or monospaced, to fit into the rigid grid imposed by ideographic typesetting. In this latter case, there are also half-width forms for squeezing more kana glyphs (which are less complex than the kanji they are amongst) into a given block of space. The same features are given to roman letters in Japanese fonts, for typesetting foreign words in the same style as the surrounding text.

The same situation occurs with numbers, which are provided in increasingly illegible compressed forms seen in [Example 32](#).

Table 11: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Diacritics’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Diacritics =	MarkToBase	mark †
	MarkToMark	mkmk †
	AboveBase	abvm †
	BelowBase	blwm †
ResetAll		

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

Table 12: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Kerning’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Kerning =	On	+kern
	Off	-kern
	Reset	
		Uppercase csp <sup>†</sup>
		ResetAll

<sup>†</sup> These feature options can be disabled with . .Off variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with . .Reset.

Example 30: Adding extra kerning for uppercase letters. (The difference is usually very small.)

**UPPERCASE EXAMPLE**  
**UPPERCASE EXAMPLE**

```
\fontspec{Romande ADF Std Bold}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE \\
\addfontfeature{Kerning=Uppercase}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE
```

Table 13: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘CharacterWidth’.

Feature	Option	Tag
CharacterWidth =	Proportional	pwid <sup>†</sup>
	Full	fwid <sup>†</sup>
	Half	hwid <sup>†</sup>
	Third	twid <sup>†</sup>
	Quarter	qwid <sup>†</sup>
	AlternateProportional	palt <sup>†</sup>
	AlternateHalf	halt <sup>†</sup>
		ResetAll

<sup>†</sup> These feature options can be disabled with . .Off variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with . .Reset.

Example 31: Proportional or fixed width forms.

ようこそ  
ようこそ  
ようこそ

ワカヨタレン  
ワカヨタレン  
ワカヨタレ

abcdef  
a b c d e f  
abcdef

```
\def\test{\makebox[2cm][l]{\texta}%
\makebox[2.5cm][l]{\textb}%
\makebox[2.5cm][l]{abcdef}}
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Proportional}\test}\\
{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Full}\test}\\
{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Half}\test}
```

Example 32: Numbers can be compressed significantly.

— 1 2 3 2 1 —	<code>\fontspec[Renderer=AAT]{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code>
-1234554321-	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Full}}</code>
-123456787654321-	<code>---12321---}\</code>
-12345678900987654321-	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Half}}</code>
	<code>---1234554321---}\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Third}}</code>
	<code>---123456787654321---}\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Quarter}}</code>
	<code>---12345678900987654321---}</code>

Table 14: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘CJKShape’.

Feature	Option	Tag
CJKShape =	Traditional	trad
	Simplified	smp1
	JIS1978	jp78
	JIS1983	jp83
	JIS1990	jp90
	Expert	expt
	NLC	nlck

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

### 15.6.1 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are ‘supposed’ to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs available in order to be able to display these glyphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: `Traditional`, `Simplified`, `JIS1978`, `JIS1983`, `JIS1990`, and `Expert`. OpenType also supports the `NLC` option.

## 15.7 Vertical typesetting

OpenType provides a plethora of features for accommodating the varieties of possibilities needed for vertical typesetting (CJK and others). No capabilities for achieving such vertical typesetting are provided by fontspec, however; please get in touch if there are improvements that could be made.

## 15.8 Numeric features

### 15.8.1 Stylistic Set variations — `ssNN`

This feature selects a ‘Stylistic Set’ variation, which usually corresponds to an alternate glyph style for a range of characters (usually an alphabet or subset thereof). This feature is specified numerically. These correspond to OpenType features `ss01`, `ss02`, etc.

Two demonstrations from the Junicode font<sup>9</sup> are shown in Example 34 and Example 35; thanks to Adam Buchbinder for the suggestion.

Multiple stylistic sets may be selected simultaneously by writing, e.g., `StylisticSet={1,2,3}`.

The `StylisticSet` feature is a synonym of the `Variant` feature for AAT fonts. See Section 22 on page 67 for a way to assign names to stylistic sets, which should be done on a per-font basis.

### 15.8.2 Character Variants — `cvNN`

Similar to the ‘Stylistic Sets’ above, ‘Character Variations’ are selected numerically to adjust the output of (usually) a single character for the particular font. These correspond to the OpenType features `cv01` to `cv99`.

<sup>8</sup><http://arkandis.tuxfamily.org/adffonts.html>

<sup>9</sup><http://junicode.sf.net>

---

Example 33: Different standards for CJK ideograph presentation.

---

啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Traditional}}</code>
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\text }</code> <code>\\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=NLC}}</code>
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\text }</code> <code>\\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Expert}}</code>
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\text }</code>

---



Table 15: Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Vertical’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Vertical =	RotatedGlyphs	vrt2 †
	AlternatesForRotation	vrtr †
	Alternates	vert †
	KanaAlternates	vkna †
	Kerning	vkern †
	AlternateMetrics	valt †
	HalfMetrics	vhal †
	ProportionalMetrics	vpal †
ResetAll		

† These feature options can be disabled with `.Off` variants, and reset to default state (neither explicitly on nor off) with `.Reset`.

---

Example 34: Insular letterforms, as used in medieval Northern Europe, for the Junicode font accessed with the `StylisticSet` feature.

---

Insular forms.	<code>\fontspec{Junicode}</code>
Insular forms.	<code>Insular forms. \</code>
Insular forms.	<code>\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=2}</code>
	<code>Insular forms. \</code>

---



---

Example 35: Enlarged minuscules (capital letters remain unchanged) for the Junicode font, accessed with the `StylisticSet` feature.

---

ENLARGED Minuscules.	<code>\fontspec{Junicode}</code>
ENLARGED Minuscules.	<code>ENLARGED Minuscules. \</code>
ENLARGED Minuscules.	<code>\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=6}</code>
	<code>ENLARGED Minuscules. \</code>

---

For each character that can be varied, it is possible to select among possible options for that particular glyph. For example, in Example 36 a variety of glyphs for the character ‘v’ are selected, in which 5 corresponds to the character ‘v’ for this font feature, and the trailing  $\langle n \rangle$  corresponds to which variety to choose. Georg Duffner’s open source Garamond revival font<sup>10</sup> is used in this example. Character variants are specifically designed not to conflict with each other, so you can enable them individually per character as shown in Example 37. (Unlike stylistic alternates, say.)

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

### 15.8.3 Alternates — `salt`

The `Alternate` feature, alias `StylisticAlternates`, is used to access alternate font glyphs when variations exist in the font, such as in Example 38. It uses a numerical selection, starting from zero, that will be different for each font. Note that the `Style=Alternate` option is equivalent to `Alternate=0` to access the default case.

Note that the indexing starts from zero. With the Lua $\TeX$  engine, `Alternate=Random` selects a random alternate.

See Section 22 on page 67 for a way to assign names to alternates if desired.

### 15.8.4 Annotation — `nalt`

Some fonts are equipped with an extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed with the `Annotation` feature (OpenType feature `nalt`), selected numerically as shown in Example 39. Note that the indexing starts from zero.

### 15.8.5 Ornament — `ornm`

Ornaments are selected with the `Ornament` feature (OpenType feature `ornm`), selected numerically such as for the `Annotation` feature. If you know of an Open Source font that supports this feature, let me know and I’ll add an example.

## 15.9 OpenType scripts and languages

Fonts that include glyphs for various scripts and languages may contain different font features for the different character sets and languages they support, and different font features may behave differently depending on the script or language chosen. When multilingual fonts are used, it is important to select which language they are being used for, and more importantly what script is being used.

The ‘script’ refers to the alphabet in use; for example, both English and French use the Latin script. Similarly, the Arabic script can be used to write in both the Arabic and Persian languages.

The `Script` and `Language` features are used to designate this information. The possible options are tabulated in Table 16 on page 53 and Table 17 on page 54, respectively. When a script or language is requested that is not supported by the current font, a warning is printed in the console output.

Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font, they are automatically selected by `fontspec` before all others and, if X $\TeX$  is

---

<sup>10</sup><http://www.georgduffner.at/ebgaramond/>

---

Example 36: The `CharacterVariant` feature showing off Georg Duffner's open source Garamond revival font.

---

*very*

*very*

*very*

*very*     `\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}`     `very` `\\`

`\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5]`     `very` `\\`

*very*     `\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:0]`     `very` `\\`

`\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:1]`     `very` `\\`

*very*     `\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:2]`     `very` `\\`

`\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:3]`     `very`

---

---

Example 37: The `CharacterVariant` feature selecting multiple variants simultaneously.

---

*É violet*

*É violet*

*É violet*     `\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}`     `& violet` `\\`

`\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant={4}]`     `& violet` `\\`

*É violet*     `\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant={5:2}]`     `& violet` `\\`

`\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant={4,5:2}]`     `& violet`

---

---

Example 38: The `Alternate` feature.

---

A & h     `\fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}`

`\textsc{a} \& h` `\\`

A & h     `\addfontfeature{Alternate=0}`

`\textsc{a} \& h`

---

---

Example 39: Annotation forms for OpenType fonts.

---

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)	
⟨1⟩ ⟨2⟩ ⟨3⟩ ⟨4⟩ ⟨5⟩ ⟨6⟩ ⟨7⟩ ⟨8⟩ ⟨9⟩	
1) 2) 3) 4) 5) 6) 7) 8) 9)	
① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨	
Ⓛ Ⓜ Ⓝ Ⓟ Ⓡ Ⓢ Ⓣ Ⓤ Ⓥ	
Ⓘ Ⓧ Ⓨ Ⓩ ⓑ ⓓ ⓔ ⓖ ⓗ	
Ⓙ Ⓚ Ⓛ Ⓧ Ⓨ Ⓩ ⓑ ⓓ ⓔ	
Ⓙ Ⓚ Ⓛ Ⓧ Ⓨ Ⓩ ⓑ ⓓ ⓔ	
Ⓙ Ⓚ Ⓛ Ⓧ Ⓨ Ⓩ ⓑ ⓓ ⓔ	
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.	
	<pre> \fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}  1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 \def\x#1{\{\addfontfeature{Annotation=#1}           1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 }} \x0\x1\x2\x3\x4\x5\x6\x7\x8\x9 </pre>

---

being used, will specifically select the OpenType renderer for this font, as described in [Section 20.2 on page 61](#).

See [Section 23 on page 68](#) for methods to create new Script or Language options if required.

### 15.9.1 Script and Language examples

In the examples shown in [Example 40](#), the Code2000 font<sup>11</sup> is used to typeset various input texts with and without the OpenType Script applied for various alphabets. The text is only rendered correctly in the second case; many examples of incorrect diacritic spacing as well as a lack of contextual ligatures and rearrangement can be seen. Thanks to Jonathan Kew, Yves Codet and Gildas Hamel for their contributions towards these examples.

---

<sup>11</sup><http://www.code2000.net/>

Example 40: An example of various Scripts and Languages.

العربي	العربي	
हिन्दी	हिन्दी	
લઘ	લઘ	
ਮਯਾਦ-ਸੂਯਕ ਨਿਵੇਨ	ਮਯਾਦ-ਸੂਯਕ ਨਿਵੇਨ	<code>\testfeature{Script=Arabic}{\arabictext}</code>
നമ്മുടവ പാരബരയ	നമ്മുടവ പാരബരയ	<code>\testfeature{Script=Devanagari}{\devanagaritext}</code>
ਆਦਿ ਸਚੁ ਜੁਗਾਦਿ ਸਚੁ	ਆਦਿ ਸਚੁ ਜੁਗਾਦਿ ਸਚੁ	<code>\testfeature{Script=Bengali}{\bengalitext}</code>
தமிழ் குடி	தமிழ் குடி	<code>\testfeature{Script=Gujarati}{\gujaratitext}</code>
Ἑβραϊκή	Ἑβραϊκή	<code>\testfeature{Script=Malayalam}{\malayalamtext}</code>
cáp số mõi	cáp số mõi	<code>\testfeature{Script=Gurmukhi}{\gurmukhitext}</code>
		<code>\testfeature{Script=Tamil}{\tamiltext}</code>
		<code>\testfeature{Script=Hebrew}{\hebrewtext}</code>
		<code>\def\examplefont{Doulos SIL}</code>
		<code>\testfeature{Language=Vietnamese}{\vietnamesetext}</code>

Table 16: Defined Scripts for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrow (¶).

Adlam	Glagolitic	Marchen	Rejang
Ahom	Gothic	¶Math	Runic
Anatolian Hieroglyphs	Grantha	¶Maths	Samaritan
Arabic	Greek	Meitei Mayek	Saurashtra
Armenian	Gujarati	Mende Kikakui	Sharada
Avestan	Gurmukhi	Meroitic Cursive	Shavian
Balinese	Hangul Jamo	Meroitic Hieroglyphs	Siddham
Bamum	Hangul	Miao	Sign Writing
Bassa Vah	Hanunoo	Modi	Sinhala
Batak	Hatran	Mongolian	Sora Sompeng
Bengali	Hebrew	Mro	Sumero-Akkadian
Bhaiksuki	¶Hiragana and Katakana	Multani	Cuneiform
Bopomofo	¶Kana	Musical Symbols	Sundanese
Brahmi	Imperial Aramaic	Myanmar	Syloti Nagri
Braille	Inscriptional Pahlavi	¶N'Ko	Syriac
Buginese	Inscriptional Parthian	¶N'ko	Tagalog
Buhid	Javanese	Nabataean	Tagbanwa
Byzantine Music	Kaithi	Newa	Tai Le
Canadian Syllabics	Kannada	Ogham	Tai Lu
Carian	Kayah Li	OL Chiki	Tai Tham
Caucasian Albanian	Kharosthi	Old Italic	Tai Viet
Chakma	Khmer	Old Hungarian	Takri
Cham	Khojki	Old North Arabian	Tamil
Cherokee	Khudawadi	Old Permic	Tangut
¶CJK	Lao	Old Persian Cuneiform	Telugu
¶CJK Ideographic	Latin	Old South Arabian	Thaana
Coptic	Lepcha	Old Turkic	Thai
Cypriot Syllabary	Limbu	¶Oriya	Tibetan
Cyrillic	Linear A	¶Odia	Tifinagh
Default	Linear B	Osage	Tirhuta
Deseret	Lisu	Osmanya	Ugaritic Cuneiform
Devanagari	Lycian	Pahawh Hmong	Vai
Duployan	Lydian	Palmyrene	Warang Citi
Egyptian Hieroglyphs	Mahajani	Pau Cin Hau	Yi
Elbasan	Malayalam	Phags-pa	
Ethiopic	Mandaic	Phoenician	
Georgian	Manichaeen	Psalter Pahlavi	

Table 17: Defined Languages for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (‡).

Abaza	Default	Igbo	Koryak	Norway House Cree	Serer
Abkhazian	Dogri	Ijo	Ladin	Nisi	South Slavey
Adyghe	Divehi	Ilokano	Lahuli	Niuean	Southern Sami
Afrikaans	Djerma	Indonesian	Lak	Nkole	Suri
Afar	Dangme	Ingush	Lambani	N'ko	Svan
Agaw	Dinka	Inuktitut	Lao	Dutch	Swedish
Altai	Dungan	Irish	Latin	Nogai	Swadaya Aramaic
Amharic	Dzongkha	Irish Traditional	Laz	Norwegian	Swahili
Arabic	Ebira	Icelandic	L-Cree	Northern Sami	Swazi
Aari	Eastern Cree	Inari Sami	Ladakhi	Northern Tai	Sutu
Arakanese	Edo	Italian	Lezgi	Esperanto	Syriac
Assamese	Efik	Hebrew	Lingala	Nynorsk	Tabasaran
Athapaskan	Greek	Javanese	Low Mari	Oji-Cree	Tajiki
Avar	English	Yiddish	Limbu	Ojibway	Tamil
Awadhi	Erzya	Japanese	Lomwe	Oriya	Tatar
Aymara	Spanish	Judezmo	Lower Sorbian	Oromo	TH-Cree
Azeri	Estonian	Jula	Lule Sami	Ossetian	Telugu
Badaga	Basque	Kabardian	Lithuanian	Palestinian Aramaic	Tongan
Baghelkhandi	Evenki	Kachchi	Luba	Pali	Tigre
Balkar	Even	Kalenjin	Luganda	Punjabi	Tigrinya
Baule	Ewe	Kannada	Luhya	Palpa	Thai
Berber	French Antillean	Karachay	Luo	Pashto	Tahitian
Bench	‡Farsi	Georgian	Latvian	Polytonic Greek	Tibetan
Bible Cree	‡Parsi	Kazakh	Majang	Pilipino	Turkmen
Belarussian	‡Persian	Kebena	Makua	Palaung	Temne
Bemba	Finnish	Khutsuri Georgian	Malayalam	Polish	Tswana
Bengali	Fijian	Khakass	Traditional	Provencal	Tundra Nenets
Bulgarian	Flemish	Khanty-Kazim	Mansi	Portuguese	Tonga
Bhili	Forest Nenets	Khmer	Marathi	Chin	Todo
Bhojpuri	Fon	Khanty-Shurishkar	Marwari	Rajasthani	Turkish
Bikol	Faroese	Khanty-Vakhi	Mbundu	R-Cree	Tsonga
Bilen	French	Khowar	Manchu	Russian Buriat	Turoyo Aramaic
Blackfoot	Frisian	Kikuyu	Moose Cree	Riang	Tulu
Balochi	Friulian	Kirghiz	Mende	Rhaeto-Romanic	Tuvin
Balante	Futa	Kisii	Me'en	Romanian	Twi
Balti	Fulani	Kokni	Mizo	Romany	Udmurt
Bambara	Ga	Kalmyk	Macedonian	Rusyn	Ukrainian
Bamileke	Gaelic	Kamba	Male	Ruanda	Urdu
Breton	Gagauz	Kumaoni	Malagasy	Russian	Upper Sorbian
Brahui	Galician	Komo	Malinke	Sadri	Uyghur
Braj Bhasha	Garshuni	Komso	Malayalam	Sanskrit	Uzbek
Burmese	Garhwali	Kanuri	Reformed	Santali	Venda
Bashkir	Ge'ez	Kodagu	Malay	Sayisi	Vietnamese
Beti	Gilyak	Korean Old Hangul	Mandinka	Sekota	Wa
Catalan	Gumuz	Konkani	Mongolian	Selkup	Wagdi
Cebuano	Gondi	Kikongo	Manipuri	Sango	West-Cree
Chechen	Greenlandic	Komi-Permyak	Maninka	Shan	Welsh
Chaha Gurage	Garo	Korean	Manx Gaelic	Sibe	Wolof
Chattisgarhi	Guarani	Komi-Zyrian	Moksha	Sidamo	Tai Lue
Chichewa	Gujarati	Kpelle	Moldavian	Silte Gurage	Xhosa
Chukchi	Haitian	Krio	Mon	Skolt Sami	Yakut
Chipewyan	Halam	Karakalpak	Moroccan	Slovak	Yoruba
Cherokee	Harauti	Karelian	Maori	Slavey	Y-Cree
Chuvash	Hausa	Karaim	Maithili	Slovenian	Yi Classic
Comorian	Hawaiin	Karen	Maltese	Somali	Yi Modern
Coptic	Hammer-Banna	Koorete	Mundari	Samoan	Chinese Hong Kong
Cree	Hiligaynon	Kashmiri	Naga-Assamese	Sena	Chinese Phonetic
Carrier	Hindi	Khasi	Nanai	Sindhi	Chinese Simplified
Crimean Tatar	High Mari	Kildin Sami	Naskapi	Sinhalese	Chinese Traditional
Church Slavonic	Hindko	Kui	N-Cree	Soninke	Zande
Czech	Ho	Kulvi	Ndebele	Sodo Gurage	Zulu
Danish	Harari	Kumyk	Ndonga	Sotho	
Dargwa	Croatian	Kurdish	Nepali	Albanian	
Woods Cree	Hungarian	Kurukh	Newari	Serbian	
German	Armenian	Kuy	Nagari	Saraiki	

## Part V

# Commands for accents and symbols (‘encodings’)

The functionality described in this section is experimental.

In the pre-Unicode era, significant work was required by  $\LaTeX$  to ensure that input characters in the source could be interpreted correctly depending on file encoding, and that glyphs in the output were selected correctly depending on the font encoding. With Unicode, we have the luxury of a single file and font encoding that is used for both input and output.

While this may provide some illusion that we could get away simply with typing Unicode text and receive correct output, this is not always the case. For a start, hyphenation in particular is language-specific, so tags should be used when switch between languages in a document. The `babel` and `polyglossia` packages both provide features for this.

Multilingual documents will often use different fonts for different languages, not just for style, but for the more pragmatic reason that fonts do not all contain the same glyphs. (In fact, only test fonts such as `Code2000` provide anywhere near the full Unicode coverage.) Indeed, certain fonts may be perfect for a certain application but miss a handful of necessary diacritics or accented letters. In these cases, `fontspec` can leverage the font encoding technology built into  $\LaTeX 2$  to provide on a per-font basis either provide fallback options or error messages when a desired accent or symbol is not available. However, at present these features can only be provided for input using  $\LaTeX$  commands rather than Unicode input; for example, typing `\`e` instead of `è` or `\textcopyright` instead of `©` in the source file.

The most widely-used encoding in  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  was T1 with companion ‘TS1’ symbols provided by the `textcomp` package. These encodings provided glyphs to typeset text in a variety of western European languages. As with most legacy  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  input methods, accents and symbols were input using encoding-dependent commands such as `\`e` as described above. As of 2017, in  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  on  $X_{\LaTeX}$  and  $\text{Lua}\LaTeX$ , the default encoding is TU, which uses Unicode for input and output. The TU encoding provides appropriate encoding-dependent definitions for input commands to match the coverage of the T1+TS1 encodings. Wider coverage is not provided by default since (a) each font will provide different glyph coverage, and (b) it is expected that most users will be writing with direct Unicode input.

For those users who do need finer-grained control, `fontspec` provides an interface for a more extensible system.

## 16 A new Unicode-based encoding from scratch

Let’s say you need to provide support for a document originally written with fonts in the OT2 encoding, which contains encoding-dependent commands for Cyrillic letters. An example from the OT2 encoding definition file (`ot2enc.def`) reads:

```

57 \DeclareTextSymbol{\CYRIE}{OT2}{5}
58 \DeclareTextSymbol{\CYRDJE}{OT2}{6}
59 \DeclareTextSymbol{\CYRTSHE}{OT2}{7}
60 \DeclareTextSymbol{\cyrnje}{OT2}{8}
61 \DeclareTextSymbol{\cyrlje}{OT2}{9}
62 \DeclareTextSymbol{\cyrdzhe}{OT2}{10}

```

To recreate this encoding in a form suitable for fontspec, create a new file named, say, `fontrange-cyr.def` and populate it with

```

...
\DeclareTextSymbol{\CYRIE} {\LastDeclaredEncoding}{"0404}
\DeclareTextSymbol{\CYRDJE} {\LastDeclaredEncoding}{"0402}
\DeclareTextSymbol{\CYRTSHE}{\LastDeclaredEncoding}{"040B}
\DeclareTextSymbol{\cyrnje} {\LastDeclaredEncoding}{"045A}
\DeclareTextSymbol{\cyrlje} {\LastDeclaredEncoding}{"0459}
\DeclareTextSymbol{\cyrdzhe}{\LastDeclaredEncoding}{"045F}
...

```

The numbers "0404, "0402, ..., are the Unicode slots (in hexadecimal) of each glyph respectively. The fontspec package provides a number of shorthands to simplify this style of input; in this case, you could also write

```

\EncodingSymbol{\CYRIE}{"0404}
...

```

To use this encoding in a fontspec font, you would first add this to your preamble:

```

\DeclareUnicodeEncoding{unicyr}{
  \input{fontrange-cyr.def}
}

```

Then follow it up with a font loading call such as

```

\setmainfont{...}[NFSSEncoding=unicyr]

```

The first argument `unicyr` is the name of the 'encoding' to use in the font family. (There's nothing special about the name chosen but it must be unique.) The second argument to `\DeclareUnicodeEncoding` also allows adjustments to be made for per-font changes. We'll cover this use case in the next section.

## 17 Adjusting a pre-existing encoding

There are three reasons to adjust a pre-existing encoding: to add, to remove, and to redefine some symbols, letters, and/or accents.

When adding symbols, etc., simply write

```

\DeclareUnicodeEncoding{unicyr}{
  \input{tuenc.def}
  \input{fontrange-cyr.def}
  \EncodingSymbol{\textruble}{"20BD}
}

```



Of course if you consistently add a number of symbols to an encoding it would be a good idea to create a new `fontrange-XX.def` file to suit your needs.

When removing symbols, use the `\UndeclareSymbol{<cmd>}` command. For example, if you are loading a font that you know is missing, say, the interrobang (not that unusual a situation), you might write:

```
\DeclareUnicodeEncoding{nobang}{
  \input{tuenc.def}
  \UndeclareSymbol\textinterrobang
}
```

Provided that you use the command `\textinterrobang` to typeset this symbol, it will appear in fonts with the default encoding, while in any font loaded with the `nobang` encoding an attempt to access the symbol will either use the default fallback definition or return an error, depending on the symbol being undeclared.

The third use case is to redefine a symbol or accent. The most common use case in this scenario is to adjust a specific accent command to either fine-tune its placement or to ‘fake’ it entirely. For example, the underdot diacritic is used in typeset Sanskrit, but it is not necessarily included as an accent symbol in all fonts. By default the underdot is defined in TU as:

```
\EncodingAccent{\d}{"0323}
```

For fonts with a missing (or poorly-spaced) "0323 accent glyph, the ‘traditional’ T<sub>E</sub>X fake accent construction could be used instead:

```
\DeclareUnicodeEncoding{fakeacc}{
  \input{tuenc.def}
  \EncodingCommand{\d}[1]{%
    \hmode@bgroup
    \o@lign{\relax#1\cr\hidewidth\ltx@sh@ft{-1ex}.\hidewidth}%
  \egroup
}
```

This would be set up in a document as such:

```
\newfontfamily\sanskritfont{CharisSIL}
\newfontfamily\titlefont{Posterama}[NFSSencoding=fakeacc]
```

Then later in the document, no additional work is needed:

```
...{\titlefont kalita\d m}... % <- uses fake accent
...{\sanskritfont kalita\d m}... % <- uses real accent
```

To reiterate from above, typing this input with Unicode text (‘kalitam’) will *bypass* this encoding mechanism and you will receive only what is contained literally within the font.

## 18 Summary of commands

The  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$  kernel provides the following font encoding commands suitable for Unicode encodings:

```
\DeclareTextCommand{<command>}{<encoding>} [<num>] [<default>] {<code>}
\DeclareUnicodeAccent{<command>}{<encoding>}{<slot>}
\DeclareTextSymbol{<command>}{<encoding>}{<slot>}
\DeclareTextComposite{<command>}{<encoding>}{<letter>}{<slot>}
\DeclareTextCompositeCommand{<command>}{<encoding>}{<letter>}{<code>}
\UndeclareTextCommand{<command>}{<encoding>}
```

See `fntguide.pdf` for full documentation of these. As shown above, the following shorthands are provided by `fontspec` to simplify the process of defining Unicode font range encodings:

```
\EncodingCommand{<command>} [<num>] [<default>] {<code>}
\EncodingAccent{<command>}{<code>}
\EncodingSymbol{<command>}{<code>}
\EncodingComposite{<command>}{<letter>}{<slot>}
\EncodingCompositeCommand{<command>}{<letter>}{<code>}
\UndeclareSymbol{<command>}
\UndeclareComposite{<command>}{<letter>}
```

Despite its name, `\UndeclareSymbol` can be used for commands defined by all three of `\EncodingCommand`, `\EncodingAccent`, and `\EncodingSymbol`.

## Part VI

# LuaTeX-only font features

## 19 Custom font features

Pre-2016, it was possible to load an OpenType font feature file to define new OpenType features for a selected font. This facility was particularly useful to implement custom substitutions, for example. As of TeXLive 2016, LuaTeX/luatex no longer supports this feature, but provides its own internal mechanisms for an equivalent interface.

Any documents using ‘feature file’ options will need to transition to the new interface. Figure 1 shows an example. Please refer to the LuaTeX/luatex documentation for more details.

Figure 1: An example of custom font features.

---

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{fontspec}
\directlua{
  fonts.handlers.otf.addfeature {
    name = "oneb",
    type = "substitution",
    data = {
      ["1"] = "one.ss01",
    }
  }
}
\setmainfont{Vollkorn-Regular.otf}[RawFeature=+oneb]
\begin{document}
1234567890
\end{document}
```

---

## Part VII

# Fonts and features with X<sub>Y</sub>TeX

## 20 X<sub>Y</sub>TeX-only font features

The features described here are available for any font selected by fontspec.

### 20.1 Mapping

Mapping enables a X<sub>Y</sub>TeX text-mapping scheme, shown in Example 41.

Only one mapping can be active at a time and a second call to Mapping will simply override the first. Using the `tex-text` mapping is also equivalent to writing `Ligatures=TeX`. The use of the latter syntax is recommended for better compatibility with LuaTeX documents.

### 20.2 Different font technologies: AAT and OpenType

X<sub>Y</sub>TeX supports two rendering technologies for typesetting, selected with the `Renderer` font feature. The first, `AAT`, is that provided (only) by Mac OS X itself. The second, `OpenType`, is an open source OpenType interpreter.<sup>12</sup> It provides greater support for OpenType features, notably contextual arrangement, over `AAT`.

In general, this feature will not need to be explicitly called: for OpenType fonts, the `OpenType` renderer is used automatically, and for `AAT` fonts, `AAT` is chosen by default. Some fonts, however, will contain font tables for *both* rendering technologies, such as the Hiragino Japanese fonts distributed with Mac OS X, and in these cases the choice may be required.

Among some other font features only available through a specific renderer, `OpenType` provides for the `Script` and `Language` features, which allow different font behaviour for different alphabets and languages; see Section 15.9 on page 50 for the description of these features. *Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font instance, they are selected by fontspec before all others and will automatically and without warning select the OpenType renderer.*

### 20.3 Optical font sizes

Multiple Master fonts are parameterised over orthogonal font axes, allowing continuous selection along such features as weight, width, and optical size. Whereas an OpenType font will have only a few separate optical sizes, a Multiple Master font's optical

<sup>12</sup>v2.4: This was called 'ICU' in previous versions of X<sub>Y</sub>TeX and fontspec. Backwards compatibility is preserved.

---

Example 41: X<sub>Y</sub>TeX's Mapping feature.

---

“iA small amount of—text!”

```
\fontspec{Cochin}[Mapping=tex-text]
^^!\`A small amount of---text!!'
```

size can be specified over a continuous range. Unfortunately, this flexibility makes it harder to create an automatic interface through  $\LaTeX$ , and the optical size for a Multiple Master font must always be specified explicitly.

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=11]
MM optical size test          \\\
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=47]
MM optical size test          \\\
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=71]
MM optical size test          \\\
```

## 21 Mac OS X's AAT fonts

*Warning!  $X_{\text{}}\TeX$ 's implementation on Mac OS X is currently in a state of flux and the information contained below may well be wrong from 2013 onwards. There is a good chance that the features described in this section will not be available any more as  $X_{\text{}}\TeX$ 's completes its transition to a cross-platform-only application.*

Mac OS X's font technology began life before the ubiquitous-OpenType era and revolved around the Apple-invented 'AAT' font format. This format had some advantages (and other disadvantages) but it never became widely popular in the font world.

Nonetheless, this is the font format that was first supported by  $X_{\text{}}\TeX$  (due to its pedigree on Mac OS X in the first place) and was the first font format supported by `fontspec`. A number of fonts distributed with Mac OS X are still in the AAT format, such as 'Skia'.

### 21.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or aesthetic reasons. For AAT fonts, you may choose from any combination of `Required`, `Common`, `Rare` (or `Discretionary`), `Logos`, `Rebus`, `Diphthong`, `Squared`, `AbbrevSquared`, and `Icelandic`.

Some other Apple AAT fonts have those 'Rare' ligatures contained in the `Icelandic` feature. Notice also that the old  $\TeX$  trick of splitting up a ligature with an empty brace pair does not work in  $X_{\text{}}\TeX$ ; you must use a `0pt` kern or `\hbox` (e.g., `\null`) to split the characters up if you do not want a ligature to be performed (the usual examples for when this might be desired are words like 'shellfull').

### 21.2 Letters

The `Letters` feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. For AAT fonts, you may choose from `Normal`, `Uppercase`, `Lowercase`, `SmallCaps`, and `InitialCaps`.

### 21.3 Numbers

The `Numbers` feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font. For AAT fonts, they may be a combination of `Lining` or `OldStyle` and `Proportional` or `Monospaced`

(the latter is good for tabular material). The synonyms `Uppercase` and `Lowercase` are equivalent to `Lining` and `OldStyle`, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in [Section 9 on page 23](#).

## 21.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to glyph substitution that vary by their position; things like contextual swashes are implemented here. The options for AAT fonts are `WordInitial`, `WordFinal` (Example 42), `LineInitial`, `LineFinal`, and `Inner` (Example 43, also called ‘non-final’ sometimes). As non-exclusive selectors, like the ligatures, you can turn them off by prefixing their name with `No`.

## 21.5 Vertical position

The `VerticalPosition` feature is used to access things like subscript (`Inferior`) and superscript (`Superior`) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The `Ordinal` option is (supposed to be) contextually sensitive to only raise characters that appear directly after a number. These are shown in Example 44.

The `realscripts` package (also loaded by `xltxtra`) redefines the `\textsubscript` and `\textsuperscript` commands to use the above font features, including for use in footnote labels.

## 21.6 Fractions

Many fonts come with the capability to typeset various forms of fractional material. This is accessed in `fontspec` with the `Fractions` feature, which may be turned `On` or `Off` in both AAT and OpenType fonts.

In AAT fonts, the ‘fraction slash’ or solidus character, is to be used to create fractions. When `Fractions` are turned `On`, then only pre-drawn fractions will be used. See Example 45.

Using the `Diagonal` option (AAT only), the font will attempt to create the fraction from superscript and subscript characters.

Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the `Alternate` feature shown in Example 46.

## 21.7 Variants

The `Variant` feature takes a single numerical input for choosing different alphabetic shapes. Don’t mind my fancy Example 47 :) I’m just looping through the nine (!) variants of Zapfino.

---

Example 42: Contextual glyph for the beginnings and ends of words.

---

<i>where is all the vegemite</i>	<pre>\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic}{% Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}} \fancy where is all the vegemite</pre>
----------------------------------	--

---

Example 43: A contextual feature for the ‘long s’ can be convenient as the character does not need to be marked up explicitly.

‘Inner’ fwashes can <i>sometimes</i> contain the archaic long s.	<code>\fontspec{Hoefler Text}[Contextuals=Inner]</code> ‘Inner’ swashes can <code>\emph{sometimes}</code> contain the archaic long~s.
--	--

Example 44: Vertical position for AAT fonts.

	<code>\fontspec{Skia}</code> Normal
	<code>\fontspec{Skia}[VerticalPosition=Superior]</code> Superior
	<code>\fontspec{Skia}[VerticalPosition=Inferior]</code> Inferior
Normal <sup>superior</sup> inferior 1 <sup>st</sup> 2 <sup>nd</sup> 3 <sup>rd</sup> 4 <sup>th</sup> 0 <sup>th</sup> 8abcde	<code>\fontspec{Skia}[VerticalPosition=Ordinal]</code> 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 0th 8abcde

Example 45: Fractions in AAT fonts. The `2044` glyph is the ‘fraction slash’ that may be typed in Mac OS X with `OPT+SHIFT+1`; not shown literally here due to font constraints.

	<code>\fontspec[Fractions=0n]{Skia}</code> 1{ <code>2044</code> }2 \quad 5{ <code>2044</code> }6 \\ % fraction slash 1/2 \quad 5/6 % regular slash
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{5}{6}$ 1/2 5/6 13579/24680 13579/24680	<code>\fontspec[Fractions=Diagonal]{Skia}</code> 13579{ <code>2044</code> }24680 \\ % fraction slash \quad 13579/24680 % regular slash

Example 46: Alternate design of pre-composed fractions.

	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}</code> 1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\ <code>\addfontfeature{Fractions=Alternate}</code> 1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{6}$ 13579/24680 $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{6}$ 13579/24680	



---

Example 47: Nine variants of Zapfino.

---



```
\newcounter{var}
\whiledo{\value{var}<9}{%
  \edef\1{%
    \noexpand\fontspec[Variant=\thevar,
      Color=0099\thevar\thevar]{Zapfino}}\1%
  \makebox[0.75\width]{d}%
  \stepcounter{var}}
\hspace*{2cm}
```

---

See [Section 22 on page 67](#) for a way to assign names to variants, which should be done on a per-font basis.

## 21.8 Alternates

Selection of Alternates *again* must be done numerically; see [Example 48](#). See [Section 22 on page 67](#) for a way to assign names to alternates, which should be done on a per-font basis.

## 21.9 Style

The options of the Style feature are defined in AAT as one of the following: Display, Engraved, IlluminatedCaps, Italic, Ruby,<sup>13</sup> TallCaps, or TitlingCaps.

Typical examples for these features are shown in [Section 15.3](#).

## 21.10 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are ‘supposed’ to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs in order to be able to display these glyphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

---

<sup>13</sup>‘Ruby’ refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations.

---

Example 48: Alternate shape selection must be numerical.

---

*Sphinx Of Black Quartz, JUDGE MY VOW*  
*Sphinx Of Black Quartz, JUDGE MY VOW*

```
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=0]
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow} \\
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=1]
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow}
```

---

### 21.11 Character width

See [Section 15.6 on page 45](#) for relevant examples; the features are the same between OpenType and AAT fonts. AAT also allows `CharacterWidth=Default` to return to the original font settings.

### 21.12 Vertical typesetting

X<sub>Y</sub>TeX provides for vertical typesetting simply with the ability to rotate the individual glyphs as a font is used for typesetting, as shown in [Example 49](#).

No actual provision is made for typesetting top-to-bottom languages; for an example of how to do this, see the vertical Chinese example provided in the X<sub>Y</sub>TeX documentation.

### 21.13 Diacritics

Diacritics are marks, such as the acute accent or the tilde, applied to letters; they usually indicate a change in pronunciation. In Arabic scripts, diacritics are used to indicate vowels. You may either choose to `Show`, `Hide` or `Decompose` them in AAT fonts. The `Hide` option is for scripts such as Arabic which may be displayed either with or without vowel markings. E.g., `\fontspec[Diacritics=Hide]{...}`

Some older fonts distributed with Mac OS X included ‘Ø’ *etc.* as shorthand for writing ‘Ø’ under the label of the `Diacritics` feature. If you come across such fonts, you’ll want to turn this feature off (imagine typing `hello/goodbye` and getting ‘helløgoodbye’ instead!) by decomposing the two characters in the diacritic into the ones you actually want. I recommend using the proper L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X input conventions for obtaining such characters instead.

### 21.14 Annotation

Various Asian fonts are equipped with a more extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed through the `Annotation` feature with the following options: `Off`, `Box`, `RoundedBox`, `Circle`, `BlackCircle`, `Parenthesis`, `Period`, `RomanNumerals`, `Diamond`, `BlackSquare`, `BlackRoundSquare`, and `DoubleCircle`.

---

Example 49: Vertical typesetting.

---

共產主義者は

共  
産  
主  
義  
者

```
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}  
\verttext
```

```
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}[Renderer=AAT,Vertical=RotatedGlyphs]  
\rotatebox{-90}{\verttext}% requires the graphicx package
```

---

## Part VIII

# Customisation and programming interface

This is the beginning of some work to provide some hooks that use fontspec for various macro programming purposes.

## 22 Defining new features

This package cannot hope to contain every possible font feature. Three commands are provided for selecting font features that are not provided for out of the box. If you are using them a lot, chances are I've left something out, so please let me know.

`\newAATfeature` New AAT features may be created with this command:

```
\newAATfeature{<feature>}{<option>}{<feature code>}{<selector code>}
```

Use the X<sub>Y</sub>TeX file `AAT-info.tex` to obtain the code numbers. See Example 50.

`\newopentypefeature` New OpenType features may be created with this command:

```
\newopentypefeature{<feature>}{<option>}{<feature tag>}
```

The synonym `\newICUfeature` is deprecated.

Here's what it would look like in practise:

```
\newopentypefeature{Style}{NoLocalForms}{-locl}
```

`\newfontfeature` In case the above commands do not accommodate the desired font feature (perhaps a new X<sub>Y</sub>TeX feature that fontspec hasn't been updated to support), a command is provided to pass arbitrary input into the font selection string:

```
\newfontfeature{<name>}{<input string>}
```

For example, Zapfino used to contain an AAT feature 'Avoid d-collisions'. To access it with this package, you could do some like the following:

```
\newfontfeature{AvoidD} {Special= Avoid d-collisions}
\newfontfeature{NoAvoidD}{Special=!Avoid d-collisions}
\fontspec{Zapfino}[AvoidD,Variant=1]
sockdolager rubdown \
\fontspec{Zapfino}[NoAvoidD,Variant=1]
sockdolager rubdown
```

The advantage to using the `\newAATfeature` and `\newopentypefeature` commands instead of `\newfontfeature` is that they check if the selected font actually

---

Example 50: Assigning new AAT features.

---

*This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.*

```
\newAATfeature{Alternate}{HoeflerSwash}{17}{1}
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=HoeflerSwash]
This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.
```

---

contains the desired font feature at load time. By contrast, `\newfontfeature` will not give a warning for improper input.

## 23 Defining new scripts and languages

`\newfontscript`  
`\newfontlanguage` While the scripts and languages listed in [Table 16](#) and [Table 17](#) are intended to be comprehensive, there may be some missing; alternatively, you might wish to use different names to access scripts/languages that are already listed. Adding scripts and languages can be performed with the `\newfontscript` and `\newfontlanguage` commands. For example,

```
\newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
\newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}
```

The first argument is the fontspec name, the second the OpenType tag. The advantage to using these commands rather than `\newfontfeature` (see [Section 22 on the preceding page](#)) is the error-checking that is performed when the script or language is requested.

## 24 Going behind fontspec's back

Expert users may wish not to use fontspec's feature handling at all, while still taking advantage of its  $\LaTeX$  font selection conveniences. The `RawFeature` font feature allows font feature selection using a literal feature selection string if you happen to have the OpenType feature tag memorised.

Multiple features can either be included in a single declaration:

```
[RawFeature=+smcp;+onum]
```

or with multiple declarations:

```
[RawFeature=+smcp, RawFeature=+onum]
```

## 25 Renaming existing features & options

`\aliasfontfeature` If you don't like the name of a particular font feature, it may be aliased to another with the `\aliasfontfeature{\langle existing name \rangle}{\langle new name \rangle}` command, such as shown in [Example 52](#).

Spaces in feature (and option names, see below) *are* allowed. (You may have noticed this already in the lists of OpenType scripts and languages).

`\aliasfontfeatureoption` If you wish to change the name of a font feature option, it can be aliased to another

---

Example 51: Using raw font features directly.

---

```
\fontspec{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[RawFeature=+smcp]
PAGELLA SMALL CAPS Pagella small caps
```

---

---

Example 52: Renaming font features.

---

	<code>\aliasfontfeature{ItalicFeatures}{IF}</code>
Roman Letters <i>And Swash</i>	<code>\fontspec{Hoefler Text}[IF = {Alternate=1}]</code>
	Roman Letters \itshape And Swash

---

---

Example 53: Renaming font feature options.

---

	<code>\aliasfontfeature{VerticalPosition}{Vert Pos}</code>
	<code>\aliasfontfeatureoption{VerticalPosition}{ScientificInferior}{Sci Inf}</code>
Scientific Inferior: 12345	<code>\fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}[Vert Pos=Sci Inf]</code>
	Scientific Inferior: 12345

---

with the command `\aliasfontfeatureoption{⟨font feature⟩}{⟨existing name⟩}{⟨new name⟩}`, such as shown in Example 53.

This example demonstrates an important point: when aliasing the feature options, the *original* feature name must be used when declaring to which feature the option belongs.

Only feature options that exist as sets of fixed strings may be altered in this way. That is, `Proportional` can be aliased to `Prop` in the `Letters` feature, but `550099BB` cannot be substituted for `Purple` in a `Color` specification. For this type of thing, the `\newfontfeature` command should be used to declare a new, *e.g.*, `PurpleColor` feature:

```
\newfontfeature{PurpleColor}{color=550099BB}
```

Except that this example was written before support for named colours was implemented. But you get the idea.

## 26 Programming interface

### 26.1 Variables

<code>\l_fontspec_family_tl</code>	In some cases, it is useful to know what the $\LaTeX$ font family of a specific <code>fontspec</code> font is. After a <code>\fontspec</code> -like command, this is stored inside the <code>\l_fontspec_family_tl</code> macro. Otherwise, $\LaTeX$ 's own <code>\f@family</code> macro can be useful here, too. The raw $\TeX$ font that is defined from the 'base' font in the family is stored in <code>\l_fontspec_font</code> .
<code>\l_fontspec_font</code>	

<code>\g_fontspec_encoding_tl</code>	Package authors who need to load fonts with legacy $\LaTeX$ <code>\NFSS</code> commands may also need to know what the default font encoding is. Since this has changed from <code>EU1/EU2</code> to <code>TU</code> , it is best to use the variables <code>\g_fontspec_encoding_tl</code> or <code>\UTFencname</code> instead.
--------------------------------------	--

### 26.2 Functions for loading new fonts and families

```
\fontspec_set_family:Nnn #1 :  $\LaTeX$  family
```

#2 : fontspec features  
 #3 : font name  
 Defines a new NFSS family from given *features* and *font*, and stores the family name in the variable *family*. This font family can then be selected with standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands `\fontfamily{family}\selectfont`. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

`\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn` #1 : primitive font  
 #2 : L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X family  
 #3 : fontspec features  
 #4 : font name  
 Variant of the above in which the primitive T<sub>E</sub>X font command is stored in the variable *primitive font*. If a family is loaded (with bold and italic shapes) the primitive font command will only select the regular face. This feature is designed for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X programmers who need to perform subsequent font-related tests on the *primitive font*.

## 26.3 Conditionals

The following functions in expl3 syntax may be used for writing code that interfaces with fontspec-loaded fonts. The following conditionals are all provided in TF, T, and F forms.

### 26.3.1 Querying font families

`\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF` Test whether the ‘font name’ (#1) exists or is loadable. The syntax of #1 is a restricted/simplified version of fontspec’s usual font loading syntax; fonts to be loaded by filename are detected by the presence of an appropriate extension (.otf, etc.), and paths should be included inline. E.g.:

```
\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF {cmr10}{T}{F}
\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF {Times~ New~ Roman}{T}{F}
\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF {texgyrepagella-regular.otf}{T}{F}
\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF {/Users/will/Library/Fonts/CODE2000.TTF}{T}{F}
```

The synonym `\IfFontExistsTF` is provided for ‘document authors’.

`\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF` Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.

`\fontspec_if_opentype:TF` Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for Lua<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X fonts.

`\fontspec_if_small_caps:TF` Test whether the currently selected font has a ‘small caps’ face to be selected with `\scshape` or similar. Note that testing whether the font has the `Letters=SmallCaps` font feature is sufficient but not necessary for this command to return true, since small caps can also be loaded from separate font files. The logic of this command is complicated by the fact that fontspec will merge shapes together (for italic small caps, etc.).

### 26.3.2 Availability of features

<code>\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
<code>\fontspec_if_feature:nTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g.: <code>\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.: <code>\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF {script} {language} {feature}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_script:nTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: <code>\fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_language:nTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.: <code>\fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_language:nnTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in script #1. E.g.: <code>\fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyr1} {SRB} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

### 26.3.3 Currently selected features

<code>\fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF</code>	Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType feature tag #1. The tag string #1 should be prefixed with + to query an active feature, and with a - (hyphen) to query a disabled feature.
<code>\fontspec_if_current_script:nTF</code>	Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.
<code>\fontspec_if_current_language:nTF</code>	Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.

## Part IX

# Implementation

## 27 Loading

The `expl3` module is `fontspec`.

```
1 <@@=fontspec>
   Check engine and load specific modules. For LuaTeX, load luaotfload.
2 <*load>
3 \sys_if_engine luatex:T
4   { \RequirePackage{luaotfload}
5     \directlua{require("fontspec")}}
6   \RequirePackageWithOptions{fontspec-luatex} \endinput }
7 \sys_if_engine xetex:T
8   { \RequirePackageWithOptions{fontspec-xetex} \endinput }
```

If not one of the above, error:

```
9 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
10 {
11   The~ fontspec~ package~ requires~ either~ XeTeX~ or~ LuaTeX.\\\
12   You~ must~ change~ your~ typesetting~ engine~ to,~ e.g.,~ "xelatex"~ or~ "lualatex"~ instead.
13 }
14 \msg_fatal:nn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
15 \endinput
16 </load>
```

## 28 Declaration of variables and functions

```
17 <*fontspec>
```

### Booleans

**firsttime** As `\keys_set:nn` is run multiple times, some of its information storing only occurs once while we decide if the font family has been defined or not. When the later processing is occurring per-shape this no longer needs to happen; this is indicated by the ‘firsttime’ conditional.

```
18 \bool_new:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
19 \bool_new:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
20 \bool_new:N \l_@@_noit_bool
21 \bool_new:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
```

These strange set functions are to simplify returning code from LuaTeX:

```
22 \bool_new:N \l_@@_check_bool
23 \cs_new:Npn \FontspecSetCheckBoolTrue { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_check_bool }
24 \cs_new:Npn \FontspecSetCheckBoolFalse { \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_check_bool }
25 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
26 \bool_new:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
```



```
27 \bool_new:N \l_@@_ot_bool
28 \bool_new:N \l_@@_mm_bool
29 \bool_new:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
30 \bool_new:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
31 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
```

For dealing with legacy maths:

```
32 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool
33 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
34 \bool_new:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
```

For package options:

```
35 \bool_new:N \g_@@_cfg_bool
36 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_bool
37 \bool_new:N \g_@@_euenc_bool

38 \bool_new:N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
39 \bool_new:N \l_@@_alias_bool
40 \bool_new:N \l_@@_external_bool
41 \bool_new:N \l_@@_never_check_bool
42 \bool_new:N \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
43 \bool_new:N \l_@@_script_exist_bool
44 \bool_new:N \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
```

### Counters

```
45 \int_new:N \l_@@_script_int
46 \int_new:N \l_@@_language_int
47 \int_new:N \l_@@_strnum_int
48 \int_new:N \l_@@_tmp_int
49 \int_new:N \l_@@_em_int
50 \int_new:N \l_@@_emdef_int
51 \int_new:N \l_@@_strong_int
52 \int_new:N \l_@@_strongdef_int
```

### Floating point

```
53 \fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_fp
54 \fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_fp
```

### Dimensions

```
55 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_dim
56 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_dim
57 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpc_dim
58 \seq_new:N \g_@@_bf_series_seq
```

### Comma lists

```
59 \clist_new:N \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist
60 \clist_new:N \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
61 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}}
```

## Property lists

```
62 \prop_new:N \g_@@_fontopts_prop
63 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfss_prop
64 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfssfont_prop
65 \prop_new:N \g_@@_OT_features_prop
66 \prop_new:N \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop
67 \prop_new:N \g_@@_em_prop
```

## Token lists

```
68 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathrm_tl
69 \tl_new:N \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
70 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathsf_tl
71 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathtt_tl

72 \tl_new:N \l_@@_family_label_tl
73 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fake_slant_tl
74 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fake_italic_tl

75 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_up_tl
76 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl
77 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_it_tl
78 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl
79 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl
80 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl
81 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl

82 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
83 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
84 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
85 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
86 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
87 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
88 \tl_new:N \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist

89 \tl_new:N \l_@@_script_name_tl
90 \tl_new:N \l_fontspeg_script_tl
91 \tl_new:N \l_@@_lang_name_tl
92 \tl_new:N \l_fontspeg_lang_tl

93 \tl_new:N \l_@@_mapping_tl
94 \tl_new:N \g_@@_hexcol_tl
95 \tl_new:N \g_@@_opacity_tl
96 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_hexcol_tl {000000}
97 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_opacity_tl {FF}
98 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_postadjust_tl { \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl }
```

## 28.1 Generic functions

```
\@@_keys_set_known:nnN
```

```
99 \cs_new:Nn \@@_keys_set_known:nnN
100 {
101 (debug) \typeout{::: Keys~set::~~{#1}~{#2} }
102 \keys_set_known:nnN {#1} {#2} #3
```

```

103 <debug> \typeout{::: Leftover:~{#3} }
104 }
105 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_keys_set_known:nnN {nx}

```

\@@\_head\_ii:n Expands to the first two *<items>* of #1.

```

106 \cs_set:Npn \@@_head_ii:n #1 { \@@_head_ii:w #1 *** \q_stop}
107 \cs_set:Npn \@@_head_ii:w #1#2#3 \q_stop { #1#2 }
108 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_head_ii:n {o}

```

\@@\_int\_mult\_truncate:Nn Missing in expl3, IMO.

```

109 \cs_new:Nn \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn
110 {
111   \int_set:Nn #1 { \__dim_eval:w #2 #1 \__dim_eval_end: }
112 }

```

## 28.2 expl3 variants

```

113 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_set:Nn {Nv}
114 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set:nn {nx}
115 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_known:nnN {nx}
116 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nxx}
117 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {NxV}
118 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput_if_new:Nnn {NxV}
119 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {Nxn}
120 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_get:NnNT {NxN}
121 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_get:NnNTF {NxN}
122 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_if_eq:nnTF {nv}
123 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nTF {x}
124 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nF {x}
125 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nF {f}
126 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_eq:nnT {ox}
127 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_replace_all:Nnn {Nnx}
128 </fontspec>

```

## 29 Error/warning/info messages

129 <\*fontspec>

Shorthands for messages:

```

130 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:n { \msg_error:nn {fontspec} }
131 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:nn { \msg_error:nnn {fontspec} }
132 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:nx { \msg_error:nnx {fontspec} }
133 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn {fontspec} }
134 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:nx { \msg_warning:nnx {fontspec} }
135 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:nxx { \msg_warning:nxxx {fontspec} }
136 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:n { \msg_info:nn {fontspec} }
137 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:nx { \msg_info:nnx {fontspec} }
138 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:nxx { \msg_info:nxxx {fontspec} }
139 \cs_new:Npn \@@_trace:n { \msg_trace:nn {fontspec} }

```

Allow messages to be written with spaces acting as normal:

```

140 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \msg_new:nnn {nxx}

```

```

141 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \msg_new:nnnn {nxxx}
142 \cs_new:Nn \@@_msg_new:nnn
143   { \msg_new:nxx {#1} {#2} { \tl_trim_spaces:n {#3} } }
144 \cs_new:Nn \@@_msg_new:nnnn
145   { \msg_new:nxxx {#1} {#2} { \tl_trim_spaces:n {#3} } { \tl_trim_spaces:n {#4} } }
146 \char_set_catcode_space:n {32}

```

## 29.1 Errors

```

147 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-inside-encdef}
148 {
149   \exp_not:N#1 can only be used in the second argument
150   to \string\DeclareUnicodeEncoding.
151 }
152 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-import-tu}
153 {
154   The "\string\ImportEncoding" command can only take "TU" as an argument at this stage.
155 }
156 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-size-info}
157 {
158   Size information must be supplied.\\
159   For example, SizeFeatures={Size={8-12},...}.
160 }
161 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {font-not-found}
162 {
163   The font "#1" cannot be found.
164 }
165 {
166   A font might not be found for many reasons.\\
167   Check the spelling, where the font is installed etc. etc.\\ \\
168   When in doubt, ask someone for help!
169 }
170 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {rename-feature-not-exist}
171 {
172   The feature #1 doesn't appear to be defined.
173 }
174 {
175   It looks like you're trying to rename a feature that doesn't exist.
176 }
177 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-glyph}
178 {
179   '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain glyph #1.
180 }
181 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {euler-too-late}
182 {
183   The euler package must be loaded BEFORE fontspec.
184 }
185 {
186   fontspec only overwrites euler's attempt to
187   define the maths text fonts if fontspec is
188   loaded after euler. Type <return> to proceed
189   with incorrect \string\mathit, \string\mathbf, etc.

```

```

190 }
191 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {no-xcolor}
192 {
193   Cannot load named colours without the xcolor package.
194 }
195 {
196   Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Instead of loading
197   the color package, use xcolor instead.
198 }
199 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-color-model}
200 {
201   Error loading colour `#1'; unknown colour model.
202 }
203 {
204   Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Please report this error
205   to my developer with a minimal example that causes the problem.
206 }
207 \@@_msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {not-in-addfontfeatures}
208 {
209   The "#1" font feature cannot be used in \string\addfontfeatures.
210 }
211 {
212   This is due to how TeX loads fonts; such settings
213   are global so adding them mid-document within a group causes
214   confusion. You'll need to define multiple font families to achieve
215   what you want.
216 }

```

## 29.2 Warnings

```

217 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {tu-clash}
218 {
219   I have found the tuenc.def encoding definition file but the TU encoding is not
220   defined by the LaTeX2e kernel; attempting to correct but you really should update
221   to the latest version of LaTeX2e.
222 }
223 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {tu-missing}
224 {
225   The TU encoding seems to be missing; please update to the latest version of LaTeX2e.
226 }
227 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {addfontfeatures-ignored}
228 {
229   \string\addfontfeature (s) ignored \msg_line_context;;
230   it cannot be used with a font that wasn't selected by a fontspec command.\
231   \
232   The current font is "\use:c{font@name}".$\
233   \int_compare:nTF { \clist_count:n {#1} = 1 }
234     { The requested feature is "#1". }
235     { The requested features are "#1". }
236 }
237 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {feature-option-overwrite}
238 {

```

```

239 Option '#2' of font feature '#1' overwritten.
240 }
241 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist-latin}
242 {
243   Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.\\
244   'Latin' script used instead.
245 }
246 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist}
247 {
248   Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.
249 }
250 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist}
251 {
252   '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
253   for AAT font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
254 }
255 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font}
256 {
257   AAT feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
258   in font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
259 }
260 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist}
261 {
262   '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
263   for OpenType font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
264 }
265 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font}
266 {
267   OpenType feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
268   for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
269   with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl' and language '\l_@@_lang_name_tl'.
270 }
271 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-opticals}
272 {
273   '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' doesn't appear to have an Optical Size axis.
274 }
275 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {language-not-exist}
276 {
277   Language '#1' not available
278   for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
279   with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl'.\\
280   'Default' language used instead.
281 }
282 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-xetex-feature}
283 {
284   Ignored XeTeX only feature: '#1'.
285 }
286 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-luatex-feature}
287 {
288   Ignored LuaTeX only feature: '#1'.
289 }

```

```

290 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping}
291 {
292   Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.
293 }
294 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtext}
295 {
296   Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.\
297   Use "Ligatures=TeX" instead of "Mapping=tex-text".
298 }
299 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cm-default-obsolete}
300 {
301   The "cm-default" package option is obsolete.
302 }
303 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {fakebold-only-xetex}
304 {
305   The "FakeBold" and "AutoFakeBold" options are only available with XeLaTeX.\
306   Option ignored.
307 }
308 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {font-index-needs-ttc}
309 {
310   The "FontIndex" feature is only supported by TTC (TrueType Collection) fonts.\
311   Feature ignored.
312 }
313 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {feat-cannot-remove}
314 {
315   The "#1" feature cannot be deactivated. Request ignored.
316 }

```

### 29.3 Info messages

```

317 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {defining-font}
318 {
319   Font family '\l_fontspec_family_tl' created for font '#2'
320   with options [\l_@@_all_features_clist].\
321   \
322   This font family consists of the following NFSS series/shapes:\
323   \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
324 }
325 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-font-shape}
326 {
327   Could not resolve font "#1" (it probably doesn't exist).
328 }
329 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {set-scale}
330 {
331   \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space scale = \l_@@_scale_tl.
332 }
333 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {setup-math}
334 {
335   Adjusting the maths setup (use [no-math] to avoid this).
336 }
337 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-scripts}
338 {

```

```

339 Font "\l_fontspec_fontname_tl" does not contain any OpenType `Script' information.
340 }
341 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice}
342 {
343   Opacity set twice, in both Colour and Opacity.\\
344   Using specification "Opacity=#1".
345 }
346 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice-col}
347 {
348   Opacity set twice, in both Opacity and Colour.\\
349   Using an opacity specification in hex of "#1/FF".
350 }
351 \@@_msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {bad-colour}
352 {
353   Bad colour declaration "#1".
354   Colour must be one of:\\
355   * a named xcolor colour\\
356   * a six-digit hex colour RRGGBB\\
357   * an eight-digit hex colour RRGGBBTT with opacity
358 }

```

Reset 'space' behaviour:

```

359 \char_set_catcode_ignore:n {32}
360 </fontspec>

```

## 30 Opening code

### 30.1 Package options

```

361 \DeclareOption{cm-default}
362 { \@@_warning:n {cm-default-obsolete} }
363 \DeclareOption{math}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_bool}
364 \DeclareOption{no-math}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}
365 \DeclareOption{config}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
366 \DeclareOption{no-config}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
367 \DeclareOption{euenc}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_euenc_bool}
368 \DeclareOption{tuenc}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_euenc_bool}
369 \DeclareOption{quiet}
370 {
371   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { info }
372   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
373 }
374 \DeclareOption{silent}
375 {
376   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { none }
377   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
378 }
379 \ExecuteOptions{config,math,tuenc}
380 \ProcessOptions*

```

### 30.2 Encodings

Soon to be the default, with a just-in-case check:



```

381 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_euenc_bool
382 {
383   \file_if_exist:nTF {tuenc.def}
384     {
385       \cs_if_exist:cF {T@TU}
386         {
387           \@@_warning:n {tu-clash}
388           \DeclareFontEncoding{TU}{-}{-}
389           \DeclareFontSubstitution{TU}{lmr}{m}{n}
390         }
391     }
392   {
393     \@@_warning:n {tu-missing}
394     \bool_set_true:N \g_@@_euenc_bool
395   }
396 }
397 \bool_if:NTF \g_@@_euenc_bool
398 {
399 \xetex) \tl_set:Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU1}
400 \latex) \tl_set:Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU2}
401 }
402 { \tl_set:Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl { TU } }
403 \tl_set:Nn \rmdefault {lmr}
404 \tl_set:Nn \sfdefault {lmss}
405 \tl_set:Nn \ttdefault {lmtt}
406 \RequirePackage[\g_fontspec_encoding_tl]{fontenc}
407 \tl_set_eq:NN \UTFencname \g_fontspec_encoding_tl % for xunicode if needed

```

To overcome the encoding changing the current font size, but only if a class has been loaded first:

```

408 \tl_if_in:NnT \@filelist {.cls} { \normalsize }

```

Dealing with a couple of the problems introduced by babel:

```

409 \tl_set_eq:NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
410 \tl_set_eq:NN \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
411 \AtBeginDocument
412 {
413   \tl_set_eq:NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
414   \tl_set_eq:NN \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
415 }

```

That latin encoding definition is repeated to suppress font warnings. Something to do with `\select@language` ending up in the `.aux` file which is read at the beginning of the document.

```

416 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_euenc_bool
417 {
418 \latex) \cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_tmp: \XeTeXpicfile
419 \latex) \cs_set:Npn \XeTeXpicfile {}
420 \RequirePackage{xunicode}
421 \latex) \cs_set_eq:NN \XeTeXpicfile \fontspec_tmp:
422 }

```

## 31 expl3 interface for primitive font loading

n,\@@\_primitive\_font\_gset:Nnn

```
423 \cs_set:Npn \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn #1#2#3
424 {
425   \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop:
426 }
427 \cs_set:Npn \@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
428 {
429   \global \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop:
430 }
```

ont\_suppress\_not\_found\_error:

```
431 \cs_set:Npn \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
432 {
433   \int_set_eq:NN \xetex_suppressfontnotfounderror:D \c_one
434 }
```

[ pTF]@\_primitive\_font\_if\_null:N

```
435 \prg_set_conditional:Nnn \@@_primitive_font_if_null:N {p,TF,T,F}
436 {
437   \ifx #1 \nullfont
438     \prg_return_true:
439   \else
440     \prg_return_false:
441   \fi
442 }
```

[ TF]@\_primitive\_font\_if\_exist:n

```
443 \prg_set_conditional:Nnn \@@_primitive_font_if_exist:n {TF,T,F}
444 {
445   \group_begin:
446     \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
447     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_@@_primitive_font {#1} {10pt}
448     \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NTF \l_@@_primitive_font
449     { \group_end: \prg_return_false: }
450     { \group_end: \prg_return_true: }
451 }
```

tive\_font\_glyph\_if\_exist:NnTF

```
452 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:Nn {p,TF,T,F}
453 {
454   \etex_iffontchar:D #1 #2 \scan_stop:
455   \prg_return_true:
456   \else:
457     \prg_return_false:
458   \fi:
459 }
```

imitive\_font\_set\_hyphenchar:Nn

```

460 \cs_new:Nn \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn
461 {
462   \tex_hyphenchar:D #1 = #2 \scan_stop:
463 }

```

## 32 User commands

This section contains the definitions of the commands detailed in the user documentation. Only the ‘top level’ definitions of the commands are contained herein; they all use or define macros which are defined or used later on in [Section 33 on page 85](#).

```

464 \NewDocumentCommand \fontspec { 0{} m 0{} }
465 {
466   \@@_main_fontspec:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
467 }

468 \NewDocumentCommand \setmainfont { 0{} m 0{} }
469 {
470   \@@_main_setmainfont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
471 }

472 \NewDocumentCommand \setsansfont { 0{} m 0{} }
473 {
474   \@@_main_setsansfont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
475 }

476 \NewDocumentCommand \setmonofont { 0{} m 0{} }
477 {
478   \@@_main_setmonofont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
479 }

480 \NewDocumentCommand \setmathrm { 0{} m 0{} }
481 {
482   \@@_main_setmathrm:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
483 }

484 \NewDocumentCommand \setboldmathrm { 0{} m 0{} }
485 {
486   \@@_main_setboldmathrm:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
487 }

488 \NewDocumentCommand \setmathsf { 0{} m 0{} }
489 {
490   \@@_main_setmathsf:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
491 }

492 \NewDocumentCommand \setmathtt { 0{} m 0{} }
493 {
494   \@@_main_setmathtt:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
495 }

```

`\setromanfont` This is the old name for `\setmainfont`, retained *ad infinitum* for backwards compatibility. It was deprecated in 2010.

```

496 \NewDocumentCommand \setromanfont { 0{} m 0{} }
497 {

```

```

498   \@@_main_setmainfont:nn {#1,#3} {#2}
499   }

500 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontfamily { m O{} m O{} }
501   {
502     \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnn {#1} {#2,#4} {#3}
503   }

504 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontface { m O{} m O{} }
505   {
506     \@@_main_newfontface:nnn {#1} {#2,#4} {#3}
507   }

508 \NewDocumentCommand \defaultfontfeatures { t+ o m }
509   {
510     \@@_main_defaultfontfeatures:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
511   }

512 \NewDocumentCommand \addfontfeatures {m}
513   {
514     \@@_main_addfontfeatures:n {#1}
515   }

516 \NewDocumentCommand \addfontfeature {m}
517   {
518     \@@_main_addfontfeatures:n {#1}
519   }

520 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontfeature {mm}
521   {
522     \@@_main_newfontfeature:nn {#1} {#2}
523   }

524 \NewDocumentCommand \newAATfeature {mmmm}
525   {
526     \@@_main_newAATfeature:nnnn {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4}
527   }

528 \NewDocumentCommand \newopentypefeature {mmm}
529   {
530     \@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
531   }

\newICUfeature   Deprecated.

532 \NewDocumentCommand \newICUfeature {mmm}
533   {
534     \@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
535   }

536 \NewDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeature {mm}
537   {
538     \@@_main_aliasfontfeature:nn {#1} {#2}
539   }

540 \NewDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeatureoption {mmm}
541   {
542     \@@_main_aliasfontfeatureoption:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
543   }

```

`\newfontscript` Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType ‘scripts’, mapping logical names to OpenType script tags.

```
544 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontscript {mm}
545 {
546   \fontspec_new_script:nn {#1} {#2}
547 }
```

`\newfontlanguage` Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType ‘languages’, mapping logical names to OpenType language tags.

```
548 \NewDocumentCommand \newfontlanguage {mm}
549 {
550   \fontspec_new_lang:nn {#1} {#2}
551 }

552 \NewDocumentCommand \DeclareFontsExtensions {m}
553 {
554   \@@_main_DeclareFontsExtensions:n {#1}
555 }

556 \NewDocumentCommand \IfFontFeatureActiveTF {mmm}
557 {
558   \@@_main_IfFontFeatureActiveTF:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
559 }
```

## 33 User command internals

### 33.1 Font selection

`\fontspec` This is the main command of the package that selects fonts with various features. It takes two arguments: the font name and the optional requested features of that font. Then this new font family is selected.

```
560 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_fontspec:nn
561 {
562   \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \f@family {#1} {#2}
563   \fontencoding { \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
564   \selectfont
565   \ignorespaces
566 }
```

`\setmainfont` The following three macros perform equivalent operations setting the default font for a particular family: ‘roman’, sans serif, or typewriter (monospaced). I end them with `\normalfont` so that if they’re used in the document, the change registers immediately.

```
567 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setmainfont:nn
568 {
569   \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_rmfamily_family {#1} {#2}
570   \tl_set_eq:NN \rmdefault \g_@@_rmfamily_family
571   \use:x { \exp_not:n { \DeclareRobustCommand \rmfamily }
572     {
573       \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }

```

```

574 \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \g_@@_rmfamily_family }
575 \exp_not:N \selectfont
576 }
577 }
578 \str_if_eq_x:nnT {\familydefault} {\rmdefault}
579 { \tl_set_eq:NN \encodingdefault \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
580 \@@_setmainfont_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
581 \normalfont
582 \ignorespaces
583 }

```

`\setsansfont`

```

584 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setsansfont:nn
585 {
586 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_sffamily_family {#1} {#2}
587 \tl_set_eq:NN \sfdefault \g_@@_sffamily_family
588 \use:x { \exp_not:n { \DeclareRobustCommand \sffamily }
589 {
590 \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
591 \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \g_@@_sffamily_family }
592 \exp_not:N \selectfont
593 }
594 }
595 \str_if_eq_x:nnT {\familydefault} {\sfdefault}
596 { \tl_set_eq:NN \encodingdefault \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
597 \@@_setsansfont_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
598 \normalfont
599 \ignorespaces
600 }

```

`\setmonofont`

```

601 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setmonofont:nn
602 {
603 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_ttfamily_family {#1} {#2}
604 \tl_set_eq:NN \ttdefault \g_@@_ttfamily_family
605 \use:x { \exp_not:n { \DeclareRobustCommand \ttfamily }
606 {
607 \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
608 \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \g_@@_ttfamily_family }
609 \exp_not:N \selectfont
610 }
611 }
612 \str_if_eq_x:nnT {\familydefault} {\ttdefault}
613 { \tl_set_eq:NN \encodingdefault \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
614 \@@_setmonofont_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
615 \normalfont
616 \ignorespaces
617 }

```

`\setmathrm` These commands are analogous to `\setmainfont` and others, but for selecting the font used for `\mathrm`, *etc.* They can only be used in the preamble of the document. `\setboldmathrm` is used for specifying which fonts should be used in `\boldmath`.

```

618 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setmathrm:nn
619 {
620 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
621 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
622 \@@_setmathrm_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
623 }

```

`\setboldmathrm`

```

624 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setboldmathrm:nn
625 {
626 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
627 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
628 \@@_setboldmathrm_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
629 }

```

`\setmathsf`

```

630 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setmathsf:nn
631 {
632 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {#1} {#2}
633 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
634 \@@_setmathsf_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
635 }

```

`\setmathtt`

```

636 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_setmathtt:nn
637 {
638 <XE> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {#1} {#2}
639 <LU> \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {Renderer=Basic,#1} {#2}
640 \@@_setmathtt_hook:nn {#1} {#2}
641 }

```

Hooks:

```

642 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmainfont_hook:nn \use_none:nn
643 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setsansfont_hook:nn \use_none:nn
644 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmonofont_hook:nn \use_none:nn
645 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmathrm_hook:nn \use_none:nn
646 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmathsf_hook:nn \use_none:nn
647 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setmathtt_hook:nn \use_none:nn
648 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_setboldmathrm_hook:nn \use_none:nn

```

Hmm, this isn't necessary with unicode-math; oh well:

```

649 \@onlypreamble\setmathrm
650 \@onlypreamble\setboldmathrm
651 \@onlypreamble\setmathsf
652 \@onlypreamble\setmathtt

```

If the commands above are not executed, then `\rmdefault` (*etc.*) will be used.

```

653 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {\rmdefault}
654 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {\sfdefault}
655 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {\ttdefault}

```

`\newfontfamily` This macro takes the arguments of `\fontspec` with a prepended (*instance cmd*). This command is used when a specific font instance needs to be referred to repetitively (*e.g.*, in a section heading) since continuously calling `\fontspec_select:nn` is inefficient because it must parse the option arguments every time.

`\fontspec_select:nn` defines a font family and saves its name in `\l_fontspec_family_tl`. This family is then used in a typical NFSS `\fontfamily` declaration, saved in the macro name specified.

```
656 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_newfontfamily:nnn
657 {
658   \fontspec_set_family:cnn { g_@@_ \cs_to_str:N #1 _family } {#2} {#3}
659   \use:x
660   {
661     \exp_not:N \DeclareRobustCommand \exp_not:N #1
662     {
663       \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \use:c {g_@@_ \cs_to_str:N #1 _family} }
664       \exp_not:N \fontencoding { \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl }
665       \exp_not:N \selectfont
666     }
667   }
668 }
```

`\newfontface` `\newfontface` uses the fact that if the argument to `BoldFont`, etc., is empty (*i.e.*, `BoldFont={}`), then no bold font is searched for.

```
669 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_newfontface:nnn
670 {
671   \newfontfamily #1 [ BoldFont={},ItalicFont={},SmallCapsFont={},#2 ] {#3}
672 }
```

### 33.2 Font feature selection

`\defaultfontfeatures` This macro takes one argument that consists of all of feature options that will be applied by default to all subsequent `\fontspec`, et al., commands. It stores its value in `\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl` (initialised empty), which is concatenated with the individual macro choices in the [...] macro.

```
673 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_defaultfontfeatures:nnn
674 {
675   \IfNoValueTF {#2}
676   { \@@_set_default_features:nn {#1} {#3} }
677   { \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3} }
678   \ignorespaces
679 }
680 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_default_features:nn
681 {
682   \IfBooleanTF {#1} \clist_put_right:Nn \clist_set:Nn
683   \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist {#2}
684 }
```

The optional argument #2 specifies font identifier(s). Branch for either (a) single token input such as `\rmdefault`, or (b) otherwise assume its a fontname. In that case, strip spaces and file extensions and lower-case to ensure consistency.



```

685 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn
686 {
687   \clist_map_inline:nn {#2}
688   {
689     \tl_if_single:nTF {##1}
690     { \tl_set:No \l_@@_tmp_tl { \cs:w g_@@_ \cs_to_str:N ##1 _family\cs_end: } }
691     { \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {##1} }
692
693   \IfBooleanTF {#1}
694   {
695     \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl \l_@@_tmpb_tl
696     { \tl_clear:N \l_@@_tmpb_tl }
697     \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_tmpb_tl {#3,}
698     \prop_gput:NVV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl \l_@@_tmpb_tl
699   }
700   {
701     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#3}
702     { \prop_gremove:NV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl }
703     { \prop_put:NVn \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl {#3,} }
704   }
705 }
706 }

```

`\addfontfeatures` In order to be able to extend the feature selection of a given font, two things need to be known: the currently selected features, and the currently selected font. Every time a font family is created, this information is saved inside a control sequence with the name of the font family itself.

This macro extracts this information, then appends the requested font features to add to the already existing ones, and calls the font again with the top level `\fontspec` command.

The default options are *not* applied (which is why `\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl` is emptied inside the group; this is allowed as `\l_fontspec_family_tl` is globally defined in `\@@_select_font_family:nn`), so this means that the only added features to the font are strictly those specified by this command.

`\addfontfeature` is defined as an alias, as I found that I often typed this instead when adding only a single font feature.

```

707 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_addfontfeatures:n
708 {
709 <debug> \typeout{^^J:.....:^^J: addfontfeatures}
710 \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
711 {
712   \group_begin:
713   \keys_set_known:nnN {fontspec-addfeatures} {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
714   \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family_prop} {options} \l_@@_options_tl
715   \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family_prop} {fontname} \l_@@_fontname_tl
716   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
717 <debug> \typeout{ \@@_select_font_family:nn { \l_@@_options_tl , #1 } {\l_@@_fontname
718   \use:x
719   {
720     \@@_select_font_family:nn

```

```

721         { \l_@@_options_tl , #1 } {\l_@@_fontname_tl}
722     }
723     \group_end:
724     \fontfamily\l_fontspeg_family_tl\selectfont
725 }
726 {
727     \@@_warning:nx {addfontfeatures-ignored} {#1}
728 }
729 \ignorespaces
730 }

```

### 33.3 Defining new font features

`\newfontfeature` `\newfontfeature` takes two arguments: the name of the feature tag by which to reference it, and the string that is used to select the font feature.

```

731 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_newfontfeature:nn
732 {
733     \keys_define:nn { fontspec }
734     {
735         #1 .code:n =
736         {
737             \@@_update_featstr:n {#2}
738         }
739     }
740 }

```

`\newAATfeature` This command assigns a new AAT feature by its code (`#2`,`#3`) to a new name (`#1`). Better than `\newfontfeature` because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```

741 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_newAATfeature:nnnn
742 {
743     \keys_if_exist:nnF { fontspec } {#1}
744     { \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {#1} }
745
746     \keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
747     { \@@_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
748
749     \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}
750 }

```

`\newopentypefeature` This command assigns a new OpenType feature by its abbreviation (`#2`) to a new name (`#1`). Better than `\newfontfeature` because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```

751 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn
752 {
753     \keys_if_exist:nnF { fontspec / options } {#1}
754     { \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {#1} }
755
756     \keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
757     { \@@_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
758 }

```

```

759 \exp_args:Nnnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn
760   {#1} {#2} { \@@_strip_plus_minus:n {#3} } {#3} {}
761 }
762 \cs_new:Nn \@@_strip_plus_minus:n { \@@_strip_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1 \q_nil }
763 \cs_new:Npn \@@_strip_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1#2 \q_nil
764 {
765   \str_case:nnF {#1} { {+} {#2} {-} {#2} } {#1#2}
766 }

```

`\aliasfontfeature` User commands for renaming font features and font feature options.

```

767 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_aliasfontfeature:nn
768 {
769 (debug) \typeout{::::::::::::::::::::::::::^~J:: aliasfontfeature{#1}{#2}}
770   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_alias_bool
771
772   \clist_map_inline:Nn \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
773     {
774       \keys_if_exist:nnT {##1} {#1}
775       {
776 (debug) \typeout{::: Key-exists~##1~/~#1}
777         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_alias_bool
778         \keys_define:nn {##1}
779           { #2 .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {####1} } } }
780       }
781     }
782
783   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_alias_bool
784     { \@@_warning:nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1} }
785 }

```

`\aliasfontfeatureoption`

```

786 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_aliasfontfeatureoption:nnn
787 {
788   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_alias_bool
789
790   \clist_map_inline:Nn \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
791     {
792       \keys_if_exist:nnT { ##1 / #1 } {#2}
793       {
794 (debug) \typeout{::: Keyval-exists~##1~/~#1~-~#2}
795         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_alias_bool
796         \keys_define:nn { ##1 / #1 }
797           { #3 .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {#2} } } }
798       }
799
800       \keys_if_exist:nnT { ##1 / #1 } {#2Reset}
801       {
802 (debug) \typeout{::: Keyval-exists~##1~/~#1~-~#2Reset}
803         \keys_define:nn { ##1 / #1 }
804           { #3Reset .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {#2Reset} } } }
805       }

```

```

806
807     \keys_if_exist:nnT { ##1 / #1 } {#20ff}
808     {
809 (debug) \typeout{::: Keyval~exists~##1~/~#1~::~#20ff}
810         \keys_define:nn { ##1 / #1 }
811             { #30ff .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {##1} { #1 = {#20ff} } } }
812     }
813 }
814
815 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_alias_bool
816 { \@@_warning:nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1/#2} }
817 }

```

\DeclareFontsExtensions dfont would never be uppercase, right?

```

818 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_DeclareFontsExtensions:n
819 {
820     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist { #1 }
821     \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist {~}
822 }
823 \DeclareFontsExtensions{.otf,.ttf,.OTF,.TTF,.ttc,.TTC,.dfont}

```

\IfFontFeatureActiveTF

```

824 \cs_set:Nn \@@_main_IfFontFeatureActiveTF:nmn
825 {
826 (debug) \typeout{^^J::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::}
827 (debug) \typeout{:IfFontFeatureActiveTF \exp_not:n{#{1}{#2}{#3}}}
828     \@@_if_font_feature:nTF {#1} {#2} {#3}
829 }
830 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_font_feature:n {TF}
831 {
832     \tl_gclear:N \g_@@_single_feat_tl
833     \group_begin:
834         \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
835         \@@_init:
836         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
837         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_never_check_bool
838         \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
839         \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
840         \@@_get_features:Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {#1}
841     \group_end:
842
843 (debug) \typeout{:::> \exp_not:N\l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist->~{\l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist}}
844 (debug) \typeout{:::> \exp_not:N\g_@@_single_feat_tl->~{\g_@@_single_feat_tl}}
845
846     \tl_if_empty:NTF \g_@@_single_feat_tl { \prg_return_false: }
847     {
848         \exp_args:NV \fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF \g_@@_single_feat_tl
849         { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
850     }
851 }

```

## 34 Programmer's interface

These functions are not used directly by fontspec when defining fonts; they are designed to be used by other packages who wish to do font-related things on top of fontspec itself.

Because I haven't fully explored how these functions will behave in practise, I am not giving them user-level names. As it becomes more clear which of these should be accessible by document writers, I'll open them up a little more.

All functions are defined assuming that the font to be queried is currently selected as a fontspec font. (I.e., via `\fontspec` or from a `\newfontfamily` macro or from `\setmainfont` and so on.)

```
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
852 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_fontspec_font: {TF,T,F}
853 {
854   \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
855 }

\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF Conditional to test if the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
856 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn {TF,T,F}
857 {
858   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
859   {
860     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
861     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
862     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
863     {
864       \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {#1}{#2}
865       \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
866     }
867     {
868       \prg_return_false:
869     }
870   }
871   {
872     \prg_return_false:
873   }
874 }

\fontspec_if_opentype:TF Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for LuaTeX
fonts.
875 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_opentype: {TF,T,F}
876 {
877   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
878   {
879     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
880     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
881     \@@_set_font_type:
882     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
883   }
884   {
```

```

885   \prg_return_false:
886   }
887 }

```

`\fontspec_if_feature:nTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g.:  
`\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}` Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

888 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:n {TF,T,F}
889 {
890   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
891   {
892     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
893     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
894     \@@_set_font_type:
895     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
896     {
897       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
898       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
899
900       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
901       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
902
903       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
904       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
905
906       \@@_check_ot_feat:nTF {#1} {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
907     }
908     {
909       \prg_return_false:
910     }
911   }
912   {
913     \prg_return_false:
914   }
915 }

```

`\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF` Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.:  
`\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum} {True} {False}` Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

916 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:nnn {TF,T,F}
917 {
918   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
919   {
920     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
921     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
922     \@@_set_font_type:
923     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
924     {
925       \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_@@_script_int {#1}
926       \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_@@_language_int {#2}

```

```

927     \@@_check_ot_feat:nTF {#3} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
928     }
929     { \prg_return_false: }
930   }
931   { \prg_return_false: }
932 }

```

`\fontspec_if_script:nTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: `\fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}` Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

933 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_script:n {TF,T,F}
934 {
935   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
936   {
937     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
938     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
939     \@@_set_font_type:
940     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
941     {
942       \@@_check_script:nTF {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
943     }
944     { \prg_return_false: }
945   }
946   { \prg_return_false: }
947 }

```

`\fontspec_if_language:nTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.: `\fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}`. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

948 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:n {TF,T,F}
949 {
950   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
951   {
952     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
953     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
954     \@@_set_font_type:
955     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
956     {
957       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
958       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
959       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
960
961       \@@_check_lang:nTF {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
962     }
963     { \prg_return_false: }
964   }
965   { \prg_return_false: }
966 }

```

`\fontspec_if_language:nnTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in script #1. E.g.: `\fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyr1} {SRB} {True} {False}`.

Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```
967 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:nn {TF,T,F}
968 {
969   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
970   {
971     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
972     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
973     \@@_set_font_type:
974     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
975     {
976       \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#1}
977       \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_@@_script_int {#1}
978       \@@_check_lang:nTF {#2} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
979     }
980     { \prg_return_false: }
981   }
982   { \prg_return_false: }
983 }
```

`fontspec_if_current_script:nTF` Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.

```
984 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_script:n {TF,T,F}
985 {
986   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
987   {
988     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
989     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
990     \@@_set_font_type:
991     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
992     {
993       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
994       \str_if_eq:nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
995       {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
996     }
997     { \prg_return_false: }
998   }
999   { \prg_return_false: }
1000 }
```

`fontspec_if_current_language:nTF` Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.

```
1001 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_language:n {TF,T,F}
1002 {
1003   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
1004   {
1005     \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
1006     \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
1007     \@@_set_font_type:
1008     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1009     {
1010       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
```



```

1011     \str_if_eq:nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
1012     {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
1013   }
1014   { \prg_return_false: }
1015 }
1016 { \prg_return_false: }
1017 }

```

```

\fontspec_set_family:Nnn #1 : family
                        #2 : fontspec features
                        #3 : font name

```

Defines a new font family from given *⟨features⟩* and *⟨font⟩*, and stores the name in the variable *⟨family⟩*. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

We want to store the actual name of the font family within the *⟨family⟩* variable because the actual  $\LaTeX$  family name is automatically generated by fontspec and it's easier to keep it that way.

Please use `\fontspec_set_family:Nnn` instead of `\@@_select_font_family:nn`, which may change in the future.

```

1018 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_family:Nnn
1019 {
1020   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
1021   \@@_select_font_family:nn {#2}{#3}
1022   \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \l_fontspec_family_tl
1023 }
1024 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_set_family:Nnn {c}

```

```

\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn

```

```

1025 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn
1026 {
1027   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
1028   \@@_select_font_family:nn {#3}{#4}
1029   \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \l_fontspec_font
1030   \tl_set_eq:NN #2 \l_fontspec_family_tl
1031 }

```

```

\fontspec_font_if_exist:n

```

```

1032 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_font_if_exist:n {TF,T,F}
1033 {
1034   \group_begin:
1035     \@@_init:
1036     \@@_if_detect_external:nT {#1} { \@@_font_is_file: }
1037     \@@_primitive_font_if_exist:nTF { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {#1} {} }
1038     { \group_end: \prg_return_true: }
1039     { \group_end: \prg_return_false: }
1040 }
1041 \cs_set_eq:NN \IfFontExistsTF \fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF

```

```

\fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType feature tag
#1.

```

```

1042 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_feature:n {TF,T,F}
1043 {
1044   \exp_args:Nxx \tl_if_in:nnTF
1045     { \fontname\font } { \tl_to_str:n {#1} }
1046     { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
1047 }

```

`\fontspec_if_small_caps:TF`

```

1048 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_small_caps: {TF,T,F}
1049 {
1050   \@@_if_merge_shape:nTF {sc}
1051   {
1052     \tl_set_eq:Nc \l_@@_smcp_shape_tl { \@@_shape_merge:nn {f@shape} {sc} }
1053   }
1054   {
1055     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_smcp_shape_tl {sc}
1056   }
1057   \cs_if_exist:cTF { \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\l_@@_smcp_shape_tl }
1058   {
1059     \tl_if_eq:ccTF
1060     { \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\l_@@_smcp_shape_tl }
1061     { \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\updefault }
1062     { \prg_return_false: }
1063     { \prg_return_true: }
1064   }
1065   { \prg_return_false: }
1066 }
1067 }

```

## 35 Internals

### 35.1 The main function for setting fonts

`\@@_select_font_family:nn` This is the command that defines font families for use, the underlying procedure of all `\fontspec`-like commands. Given a list of font features (#1) for a requested font (#2), it will define an NFSS family for that font and put the family name (globally) into `\l_fontspec_family_tl`. The TeX `\font` command is (globally) stored in `\l_fontspec_font`.

This macro does its processing inside a group to attempt to restrict the scope of its internal processing. This works to some degree to insulate the internal commands from having to be manually cleared.

Some often-used variables to know about:

- `\l_fontspec_fontname_tl` is used as the generic name of the font being defined.
- `\l_@@_fontid_tl` is the unique identifier of the font with all its features.
- `\l_@@_fontname_up_tl` is the font specifically to be used as the upright font.
- `\l_@@_basename_tl` is the (immutable) original argument used for \*-replacing.

- `\l_fontspec_font` is the plain T<sub>E</sub>X font of the upright font requested.

```

1068 \cs_new_protected:Nn \@@_select_font_family:nn
1069 {
1070 (debug)\typeout{^^J^^J::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::^^J:: fontspec_select:nn~ {#1}~ {#2} }
1071   \group_begin:
1072   \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:
1073   \@@_init:
1074
1075   \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl    {#2}
1076   \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_up_tl {#2}
1077   \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_basename_tl        {#2}
1078
1079   \@@_if_detect_external:nT {#2}
1080   { \keys_set:nn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Path} }
1081
1082   \keys_set_known:nn {fontspec-preparse-cfg} {#1}
1083
1084   \@@_init_ttc:n {#2}
1085   \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
1086
1087   \@@_extract_all_features:n {#1}
1088   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_fontid_tl { \tl_to_str:N \l_fontspec_fontname_tl-:-\tl_to_str:N \l_@@_all_f
1089
1090 (debug)\typeout{fontid: \l_@@_fontid_tl}
1091
1092   \@@_preparse_features:
1093   \@@_load_font:
1094   \@@_set_scriptlang:
1095   \@@_get_features:Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {}
1096   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1097
1098   \@@_save_family_needed:nTF {#2}
1099   {
1100     \@@_save_family:nn {#1} {#2}
1101 (debug) \@@_warning:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
1102   }
1103   {
1104 (debug) \typeout{Font~ family~ already~ defined.}
1105   }
1106   \group_end:
1107 }

```

`\fontspec_select:nn` This old name has been used by 3rd party packages so for compatibility:

```

1108 \cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_select:nn \@@_select_font_family:nn %% deprecated, for compatibility

```

`\@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn` Assigns font name #2 to token list variable #1 and strips extension(s) from it in the case of an external font. We strip spaces for luatex for consistency with luaotfload, although I'm not sure this is necessary any more. At one stage this also lowercased the name, but this step has been removed unless someone can remind me why it was necessary.

```

1109 \cs_new:Nn \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn
1110 {
1111   \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2}
1112 (luatex) \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 {~}
1113   \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
1114     {
1115     \tl_if_in:NnT #1 {##1}
1116       {
1117         \tl_remove_once:Nn #1 {##1}
1118         \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_extension_tl {##1}
1119         \clist_map_break:
1120       }
1121     }
1122 }

```

\@@\_if\_detect\_external:nT Check if either the fontname ends with a known font extension.

```

1123 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_detect_external:n {T}
1124 {
1125 (debug) \typeout{:: @@_if_detect_external:n { \exp_not:n {#1} } }
1126   \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
1127     {
1128     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool
1129     \exp_args:Nx % <- this should be handled earlier
1130     \tl_if_in:nnT {#1 <= end_of_string} {##1 <= end_of_string}
1131       { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool \clist_map_break: }
1132     }
1133   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_tmpa_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1134 }

```

\@@\_init\_ttc:n For TTC fonts we assume they will be loading the italic/bold fonts from the same file, so prepopulate the fontnames to avoid needing to do it manually.

```

1135 \cs_new:Nn \@@_init_ttc:n
1136 {
1137   \str_if_eq_x:nnT { \str_lower_case:f {\l_@@_extension_tl} } {.ttc}
1138     {
1139     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_it_tl {#1}
1140     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl {#1}
1141     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
1142     }
1143 }

```

\_load\_external\_fontoptions:Nn Load a possible .fontspec font configuration file. This file could set font-specific options for the font about to be loaded.

```

1144 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn
1145 {
1146   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
1147     {
1148 (debug) \typeout{:: @@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \exp_not:N #1 {#2} }
1149     \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn #1 {#2}
1150     \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {#1.fontspec}
1151     \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {~}

```

```

1152     \prop_if_in:NVF \g_@@_fontopts_prop #1
1153     {
1154         \exp_args:No \file_if_exist:nT { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl }
1155         { \file_input:n { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl } }
1156     }
1157 }
1158 }

```

\@@\_extract\_all\_features:

```

1159 \cs_new:Nn \@@_extract_all_features:n
1160 {
1161 (debug) \typeout{:: @@_extract_all_features:n { \unexpanded {#1} } }
1162 \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
1163 {
1164     \clist_set:Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist {#1}
1165 }
1166 {
1167     \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
1168     { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
1169
1170     \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_family_label_tl \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist
1171     { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist }
1172     \tl_clear:N \l_@@_family_label_tl
1173
1174     \clist_set:Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist
1175     {
1176         \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist,
1177         \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist,
1178         \l_@@_fontopts_clist,
1179         #1
1180     }
1181 }
1182 }

```

\@@\_preparse\_features: #1 : feature options  
#2 : font name

Perform the (multi-step) feature parsing process.

Convert the requested features to font definition strings. First the features are parsed for information about font loading (whether it's a named font or external font, etc.), and then information is extracted for the names of the other shape fonts.

```

1183 \cs_new:Nn \@@_preparse_features:
1184 {
1185 (debug) \typeout{:: @@_preparse_features:}

```

Detect if external fonts are to be used, possibly automatically, and parse fontspec features for bold/italic fonts and their features.

```

1186
1187 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse-external}
1188 { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
1189 \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1190

```

When `\l_fontspec_fontname_tl` is augmented with a prefix or whatever to create the name of the upright font (`\l_@@_fontname_up_tl`), this latter is the new ‘general font name’ to use.

```

1191 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontname_up_tl
1192 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
1193 \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1194 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-prepare} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
1195 \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
1196 }

```

`\@@_load_font:`

```

1197 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_font:
1198 {
1199 <debug>\typeout{: @@@_load_font}
1200 <debug>\typeout{Set~ base~ font~ for~ preliminary~ analysis: \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl } }
1201 \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font
1202 { \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl } } } {\f@size pt}
1203 \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error:nx {font-not-found} {\l_@@_fontname_up_tl } }
1204 \@@_set_font_type:
1205 <debug>\typeout{Set~ base~ font~ properly: \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl } }
1206 \@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn \l_fontspec_font
1207 { \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_@@_fontname_up_tl } } } {\f@size pt}
1208 \l_fontspec_font % this is necessary for LuaLaTeX to check the scripts properly
1209 }

```

`\@@_construct_font_call:nn` Constructs the complete font invocation. #1 : Base name

#2 : Extension  
 #3 : TTC Index  
 #4 : Renderer  
 #5 : Optical size  
 #6 : Font features

We check if *<Font features>* are empty and if so don't add in the separator colon.

```

1210 \cs_set:Nn \@@_construct_font_call:nnnnnn
1211 {
1212 <xetex> " \@@_fontname_wrap:n { #1 #2 #3 }
1213 <luatex> " \@@_fontname_wrap:n { #1 #2 } #3
1214 #4 #5
1215 \str_if_eq_x:nnF {#6}{ } {:#6} "
1216 }

```

In practice, we don't use the six-argument version, since most arguments are constructed on-the-fly:

```

1217 \cs_set:Nn \@@_construct_font_call:nn
1218 {
1219 \@@_construct_font_call:nnnnnn
1220 {#1}
1221 \l_@@_extension_tl
1222 \l_@@_ttc_index_tl
1223 \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
1224 \l_@@_optical_size_tl
1225 {#2}

```

```
1226 }
```

`\font_is_file:, \font_is_name:` The `\fontname_wrap:n` command takes the font name and either passes it through unchanged or wraps it in the syntax for loading a font 'by filename'. X<sub>Y</sub>TEX's syntax is followed since `luaotfload` provides compatibility.

```
1227 \cs_new:Nn \font_is_name:
1228 {
1229   \cs_set_eq:NN \fontname_wrap:n \use:n
1230 }
1231 \cs_new:Nn \font_is_file:
1232 {
1233   \cs_set:Npn \fontname_wrap:n ##1 { [ \font_path_tl ##1 ] }
1234 }
```

`\set_scriptlang:` Only necessary for OpenType fonts. First check if the font supports scripts, then apply defaults if none are explicitly requested. Similarly with the language settings.

```
1235 \cs_new:Nn \set_scriptlang:
1236 {
1237   \bool_if:NT \font_firsttime_bool
1238   {
1239     \tl_if_empty:NTF \font_script_name_tl
1240     {
1241       \set_check_script:nTF {latn}
1242       {
1243         \tl_set:Nn \font_script_name_tl {Latin}
1244         \tl_if_empty:NTF \font_lang_name_tl
1245         {
1246           \tl_set:Nn \font_lang_name_tl {Default}
1247         }
1248         \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Script=\font_script_name_tl}
1249         \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Language=\font_lang_name_tl}
1250       }
1251     }
1252     \font_info:n {no-scripts}
1253   }
1254 }
1255 {
1256   \tl_if_empty:NTF \font_lang_name_tl
1257   {
1258     \tl_set:Nn \font_lang_name_tl {Default}
1259   }
1260   \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Script=\font_script_name_tl}
1261   \keys_set:nx {fontspec-opentype} {Language=\font_lang_name_tl}
1262 }
1263 }
1264 }
```

`\get_features:Nn` This macro is a wrapper for `\keys_set:nn` which expands and adds a default specification to the original passed options. It begins by initialising the commands used to hold font-feature specific strings. Its argument is any additional features to prepend to the default.

Do not set the colour if not explicitly spec'd else `\color` (using specials) will not work.

```

1265 \cs_set:Nn \@@_get_features:Nn
1266 {
1267 (debug) \typeout{:: @@_get_features:Nn \exp_not:N #1 { \exp_not:n {#2} } }
1268 \@@_init_fontface:
1269 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_fontfeat_clist,#2}
1270 \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1271 \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1272 (*xetex)
1273 \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1274 {
1275 (debug) \typeout{::: Setting~ keys~ for~ OpenType~ font~ features:~"\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1276 % \tracingall
1277 \keys_set:nV {fontspec-opentype} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1278 % \ERROR
1279 }
1280 {
1281 (debug) \typeout{::: Setting~ keys~ for~ AAT~ font~ features:~"\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist"}
1282 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1283 { \keys_set:nV {fontspec-aat} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist }
1284 }
1285 (/xetex)
1286 (*luatex)
1287 (debug) \typeout{::: Setting~ keys~ for~ OpenType~ font~ features:~"\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1288 \keys_set:nV {fontspec-opentype} \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1289 (/luatex)
1290
1291 \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_mapping_tl
1292 { \@@_update_featstr:n { mapping = \l_@@_mapping_tl } }
1293
1294 \str_if_eq_x:nnF { \l_@@_hexcol_tl \l_@@_opacity_tl }
1295 { \g_@@_hexcol_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl }
1296 { \@@_update_featstr:n { color = \l_@@_hexcol_tl\l_@@_opacity_tl } }
1297
1298 \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1299 }

```

`\@@_save_family_needed:nTF` Check if the family is unique and, if so, save its information. (`\addfontfeature` and other macros use this data.) Then the font family and its shapes are defined in the NFSS.

Now we have a unique (in fact, too unique!) string that contains the family name and every option in abbreviated form. This is used with a counter to create a simple NFSS family name for the font we're selecting.

```

1300 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_save_family_needed:n {TF}
1301 {
1302
1303 (debug) \typeout{save~ family:~ #1}
1304 (debug) \typeout{== fontid_tl: "\l_@@_fontid_tl".}
1305
1306 \cs_if_exist:NT \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl

```



```

1307 {
1308   \cs_set_eq:cN {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl} \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
1309 }
1310 \cs_if_exist:cF {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
1311 {
1312   % The font name is fully expanded, in case it's defined in terms of macros, before having
1313   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {#1}
1314   \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {~}
1315
1316   \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int}
1317   { \int_gincr:c {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int} }
1318   { \int_new:c {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int} }
1319
1320   \tl_gset:cx {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
1321   {
1322     \l_@@_tmp_tl ( \int_use:c {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int} )
1323   }
1324 }
1325 \tl_gset:Nv \l_fontspeg_family_tl {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
1326 \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop}
1327   \prg_return_false: \prg_return_true:
1328 }

```

`\@@_save_family:nn` Saves the relevant font information for future processing.

```

1329 \cs_new:Nn \@@_save_family:nn
1330 {
1331   \@@_save_fontinfo:n {#2}
1332   \@@_find_autofonts:
1333   \DeclareFontFamily{\l_@@_nfss_enc_tl}{\l_fontspeg_family_tl}{
1334     \@@_set_faces:
1335     \@@_info:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
1336 }

```

`\@@_save_fontinfo:n` Saves the relevant font information for future processing.

```

1337 \cs_new:Nn \@@_save_fontinfo:n
1338 {
1339   \prop_new:c {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop}
1340   \prop_gput:cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {fontname} { #1 }
1341   \prop_gput:cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {options} { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
1342   \prop_gput:cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {fontdef}
1343   {
1344     \@@_construct_font_call:nn {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl}
1345     { \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist }
1346   }
1347   \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_script_int
1348   \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {lang-num} \l_@@_language_int
1349   \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspeg_script_tl
1350   \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspeg_family_tl _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspeg_lang_tl
1351 }

```

## 35.2 Setting font shapes in a family

All NFSS specifications take their default values, so if any of them are redefined, the shapes will be selected to fit in with the current state. For example, if `\bfdefault` is redefined to `b`, all bold shapes defined by this package will also be assigned to `b`.

The combination shapes are searched first because they use information that may be redefined in the single cases. E.g., if no bold font is specified then `set_autofont` will attempt to set it. This has subtle/small ramifications on the logic of choosing the bold italic font.

`\@@_find_autofonts:`

```

1352 \cs_new:Nn \@@_find_autofonts:
1353 {
1354   \bool_if:nF {\l_@@_noit_bool || \l_@@_nobf_bool}
1355   {
1356     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_@@_fontname_it_tl} {/B}
1357     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_@@_fontname_bf_tl} {/I}
1358     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl} {/BI}
1359   }
1360
1361   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nobf_bool
1362   {
1363     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl} {/B}
1364   }
1365
1366   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_noit_bool
1367   {
1368     \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_it_tl {\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl} {/I}
1369   }
1370
1371   \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl {\l_@@_fontname_sl_tl} {/B}
1372 }

```

`\@@_set_faces:`

```

1373 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_faces:
1374 {
1375   \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn \mddefault \updefault \l_fontspeg_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_up_
1376   \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn \bfdefault \updefault \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
1377   \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn \mddefault \itdefault \l_@@_fontname_it_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
1378   \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn \mddefault \sldefault \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
1379   \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn \bfdefault \itdefault \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
1380   \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn \bfdefault \sldefault \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
1381
1382   \prop_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_nfssfont_prop { \@@_set_faces_aux:nmnnn ##2 }
1383 }
1384 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_faces_aux:nmnnn
1385 {
1386   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#3}
1387   \@@_make_font_shapes:Nmnnn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#1} {#2} {#4} {#5}
1388 }

```

fontspec\_complete\_fontname:Nn This macro defines #1 as the input with any \* tokens of its input replaced by the font name. This lets us define supplementary fonts in full (“Baskerville Semibold”) or in abbreviation (“\* Semibold”).

```

1389 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn
1390 {
1391   \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2}
1392   \tl_replace_all:Nnx #1 {*} {\l_@@_basename_tl}
1393 (luatex) \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 {~}
1394 }

```

\@@\_add\_nfssfont:nnnn #1 : series  
#2 : shape  
#3 : fontname  
#4 : fontspec features

```

1395 \cs_new:Nn \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn
1396 {
1397   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_this_font_tl {#3}
1398
1399   \tl_if_empty:xTF {#4}
1400   { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}} }
1401   { \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse-nested} {#4} \l_@@_tmp_tl }
1402
1403   \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_this_font_tl
1404   {
1405     \prop_put:Nxx \l_@@_nfssfont_prop {#1/#2}
1406     { {#1}{#2}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{#4}{\l_@@_sizefeat_clist} }
1407   }
1408 }

```

### 35.2.1 Fonts

\@@\_set\_font\_type: Now check if the font is to be rendered with ATSUI or Harfbuzz. This will either be automatic (based on the font type), or specified by the user via a font feature.

This macro sets booleans accordingly depending if the font in \l\_fontspeg\_font is an AAT font or an OpenType font or a font with feature axes (either AAT or Multiple Master), respectively.

```

1409 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_type:
1410 {
1411 (debug) \typeout{:: @@@_set_font_type:}
1412 (*xetex)
1413   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
1414   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
1415   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_ot_bool
1416   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_mm_bool
1417   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
1418   \ifcase\XeTeXfonttype\l_fontspeg_font
1419     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
1420   \or
1421     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
1422   \ifnum\XeTeXcountvariations\l_fontspeg_font > \c_zero

```

```

l423     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_mm_bool
l424     \fi
l425     \or
l426     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
l427     \fi

```

If automatic, the `\l_fontspec_renderer_tl` token list will still be empty (other suffices that could be added will be later in the feature processing), and if it is indeed still empty, assign it a value so that the other weights of the font are specifically loaded with the same renderer.

```

l428     \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
l429     {
l430     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
l431     { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/AAT} }
l432     {
l433     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_ot_bool
l434     { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/OT} }
l435     }
l436     }
l437 </xetex>
l438 <*luatex>
l439     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
l440 </luatex>
l441     }

```

`\@@_set_autofont:Nnn` #1 : Font name tl  
#2 : Base font name  
#3 : Font name modifier

This function looks for font with `<name>` and `<modifier>` #2#3, and if found (i.e., different to font with name #2) stores it in tl #1. A modifier is something like `/B` to look for a bold font, for example.

We can't match external fonts in this way (in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX anyway; todo: test with Lua-TeX). If `<font name tl>` is not empty, then it's already been specified by the user so abort. If `<Base font name>` is not given, we also abort for obvious reasons.

If `<font name tl>` is empty, then proceed. If not found, `<font name tl>` remains empty. Otherwise, we have a match.

```

l442 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_autofont:Nnn
l443 {
l444 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_external_bool
l445 {
l446 \tl_if_empty:xF {#2}
l447 {
l448 \tl_if_empty:NT #1
l449 {
l450 \@@_if_autofont:nnTF {#2} {#3}
l451 { \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2#3} }
l452 { \@@_info:nx {no-font-shape} {#2#3} }
l453 }
l454 }
l455 }
l456 }

```

```

1457
1458 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_autofont:nn {T,TF}
1459 {
1460   \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_tmpa_font { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {#1} {} } {\f@size pt}
1461   \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_tmpb_font { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {#1#2} {} } {\f@size pt}
1462   \str_if_eq_x:nnTF { \fontname \l_tmpa_font } { \fontname \l_tmpb_font }
1463   { \prg_return_false: }
1464   { \prg_return_true: }
1465 }

```

```

\@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn #1 : Font name
                          #2 : Font series
                          #3 : Font shape
                          #4 : Font features
                          #5 : Size features

```

This macro eventually uses `\DeclareFontShape` to define the font shape in question.

```

1466 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn
1467 {
1468   \group_begin:
1469     \@@_keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-prepare-external} { #4 } \l_@@_leftover_clist
1470     \@@_load_fontname:n {#1}
1471     \@@_declare_shape:nxxx {#2} {#3} { \l_@@_fontopts_clist, \l_@@_leftover_clist } {#5}
1472   \group_end:
1473 }
1474
1475 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_fontname:n
1476 {
1477 (debug) \typeout{:: \@@_load_fontname:n {#1} }
1478   \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#1}
1479   \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
1480   { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
1481   \@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font { \@@_construct_font_call:nn {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} }
1482   \@@_primitive_font_if_null:NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error:nx {font-not-found} {#1} }
1483 }

```

```

\@@_declare_shape:nmmn #1 : Font series
                      #2 : Font shape
                      #3 : Font features
                      #4 : Size features

```

Wrapper for `\DeclareFontShape`. And finally the actual font shape declaration using `\l_@@_nfss_tl` defined above. `\l_@@_postadjust_tl` is defined in various places to deal with things like the hyphenation character and interword spacing.

The main part is to loop through `SizeFeatures` arguments, which are of the form `SizeFeatures={<one>},{<two>},{<three>}`.

```

1484 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape:nmmn
1485 {
1486 (debug)\typeout{~ declare_shape:~{\l_fontspec_fontname_tl}~{#1}~{#2}}
1487   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_nfss_tl
1488   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl

```

```

1489 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1490
1491 \exp_args:Nx \clist_map_inline:nn {#4} { \@@_setup_single_size:nn {#3} {##1} }
1492
1493 \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn {#1} {#2}
1494 \@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn {#1} {#2}
1495 \@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn {#1} {#2}
1496 \@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn {#1} {#2}
1497 }
1498 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_declare_shape:nnnn {nnxx}

```

\@@\_setup\_single\_size:nn

```

1499 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setup_single_size:nn
1500 {
1501   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_size_tl
1502   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_sizedfont_tl \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl % in case not spec'ed
1503
1504   \keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-sizing} { \exp_after:wN \use:n #2 }
1505   \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist
1506   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_size_tl { \@@_error:n {no-size-info} }
1507   (debug)\typeout{==~ size:~\l_@@_size_tl}
1508
1509   % "normal"
1510   \@@_load_fontname:n {\l_@@_sizedfont_tl}
1511   \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn \l_@@_nfss_tl {#1} {\l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist} {}
1512   (debug) \typeout{===~ sized~ font:~ \l_@@_sizedfont_tl}
1513
1514   % small caps
1515   \clist_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
1516
1517   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1518   {
1519     \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl
1520     {
1521       \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
1522       {
1523         (debug)\typeout{====~Small~ caps~ found.}
1524         \clist_put_left:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist {Letters=SmallCaps}
1525       }
1526     }
1527     (debug)\typeout{====~Small~ caps~ not~ found.}
1528     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1529   }
1530 }
1531 { \@@_load_fontname:n {\l_@@_fontname_sc_tl} }% local for each size
1532 }
1533
1534 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1535 {
1536   \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
1537   {#1} {\l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist} {\l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist}
1538 }

```

```
1539 }
```

```
\@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn
```

```
1540 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn
1541 {
1542 (debug)\typeout{====~Setup~NFSS~shape:~<\l_@@_size_tl>~\l_fontspeg_fontname_tl}
1543
1544 \@@_get_features:Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist { #2 , #3 , #4 }
1545 (debug)\typeout{====~Gathered~features:~\l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist}
1546
1547 \tl_put_right:Nx #1
1548 {
1549 <\l_@@_size_tl> \l_@@_scale_tl
1550 \@@_construct_font_call:nn { \l_fontspeg_fontname_tl }
1551 { \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist }
1552 }
1553 }
```

```
\@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn
```

```
1554 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn
1555 {
1556 \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\l_@@_nfss_enc_tl} {\l_fontspeg_family_tl}
1557 {#1} {#2} {\l_@@_nfss_tl}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1558 }
```

```
\@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn
```

```
1559 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn
1560 {
1561 \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
1562 {
1563 \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\l_@@_nfss_enc_tl} {\l_fontspeg_family_tl} {#1}
1564 { \@@_combo_sc_shape:n {#2} } {\l_@@_nfss_sc_tl} {\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1565 }
1566 }
1567
1568 \cs_new:Nn \@@_combo_sc_shape:n
1569 {
1570 \tl_if_exist:cTF { \@@_shape_merge:nn {#1} {\scdefault} }
1571 { \tl_use:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {#1} {\scdefault} } }
1572 { \scdefault }
1573 }
```

```
\@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn
```

```
1574 \cs_new:Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn
1575 {
1576 (debug)\typeout{DeclareFontShape:~{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}...}
1577 \group_begin:
1578 \normalsize
1579 \cs_undefine:c {#1/#2/#3/#4/\f@size}
1580 \group_end:
1581 \DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}
```

```

1582 }
1583 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn {xxxxxx}

```

`\@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn` This extra stuff for the slanted shape substitution is a little bit awkward. We define the slanted shape to be a synonym for it when (a) we're defining an italic font, but also (b) when the default slanted shape isn't 'it'. (Presumably this turned up once in a test and I realised it caused problems. I doubt this would happen much.)

We should test when a slanted font has been specified and not run this code if so, but the `\@@_set_slanted:` code will overwrite this anyway if necessary.

```

1584 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn
1585 {
1586   \bool_if:nT
1587     {
1588       \str_if_eq_x_p:nn {#2} {\itdefault} &&
1589       !(\str_if_eq_x_p:nn {\itdefault} {\sldefault})
1590     }
1591     {
1592       \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\l_@@_nfss_enc_tl}{\l_fontspeg_family_tl}{#1}{\sldefault}
1593       {<->ssub*\l_fontspeg_family_tl/#1/\itdefault}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1594     }
1595 }

```

`\@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn` Lastly some informative messaging.

```

1596 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn
1597 {
1598   \tl_gput_right:Nx \l_fontspeg_defined_shapes_tl
1599   {
1600     \exp_not:n { \ }
1601     -- \exp_not:N \str_case:nn {#1/#2}
1602     {
1603       {\mddefault/\updefault} {'normal'~}
1604       {\bfdefault/\updefault} {'bold'~}
1605       {\mddefault/\itdefault} {'italic'~}
1606       {\mddefault/\sldefault} {'slanted'~}
1607       {\bfdefault/\itdefault} {'bold~ italic'~}
1608       {\bfdefault/\sldefault} {'bold~ slanted'~}
1609     } (#1/#2)~
1610     with~ NFSS~ spec.:~
1611     \l_@@_nfss_tl
1612     \exp_not:n { \ }
1613     -- \exp_not:N \str_case:nn { #1 / \@@_combo_sc_shape:n {#2} }
1614     {
1615       {\mddefault/\scdefault} {'small~ caps'~}
1616       {\bfdefault/\scdefault} {'bold~ small~ caps'~}
1617       {\mddefault/\itscdefault} {'italic~ small~ caps'~}
1618       {\bfdefault/\itscdefault} {'bold~ italic~ small~ caps'~}
1619       {\mddefault/\slscdefault} {'slanted~ small~ caps'~}
1620       {\bfdefault/\slscdefault} {'bold~ slanted~ small~ caps'~}
1621     }~( #1 / \@@_combo_sc_shape:n {#2} )~
1622     with~ NFSS~ spec.:~
1623     \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl

```



```

1624 \tl_if_empty:xF {\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1625 {
1626   \exp_not:N \and~ font~ adjustment~ code: \exp_not:N \ \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1627 }
1628 }
1629 }

```

Maybe `\str_if_eq_x:nnF` would be better?

### 35.2.2 Features

`\l_@@_pre_feat_sclist` These are the features always applied to a font selection before other features.

```

1630 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist
1631 (*xetex)
1632 {
1633   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_ot_bool
1634   {
1635     \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspeg_script_tl
1636     {
1637       script = \l_fontspeg_script_tl ;
1638       language = \l_fontspeg_lang_tl ;
1639     }
1640   }
1641 }
1642 (/xetex)
1643 (*luatex)
1644 {
1645   mode = \l_fontspeg_mode_tl ;
1646   \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspeg_script_tl
1647   {
1648     script = \l_fontspeg_script_tl ;
1649     language = \l_fontspeg_lang_tl ;
1650   }
1651 }
1652 (/luatex)

```

`\@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF` This macro checks if the font contains small caps.

```

1653 (\luatex)\cs_set:Nn \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
1654 (\xetex)\cs_set:Nn \@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF
1655 {
1656   \@@_check_ot_feat:nTF {smcp} {#1} {#2}
1657 }
1658 (*xetex)
1659 \cs_set:Nn \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
1660 {
1661   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1662   { \@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF {#1} {#2} }
1663   {
1664     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1665     { \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {3}{3} {#1} {#2} }
1666   }
1667 }

```

```
1668 \xetexx
```

`\@@_update_featstr:n` `\l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist` is the string used to define the list of specific font features. Each time another font feature is requested, this macro is used to add that feature to the list. Font features are separated by semicolons.

```
1669 \cs_new:Nn \@@_update_featstr:n
1670 {
1671 (debug) \typeout{::: @@_update_featstr:n {#1}}
1672 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1673 {
1674 \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { #1 }
1675 (debug) \typeout{:::~ Adding~ feature.}
1676 \tl_gput_right:Nx \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {#1;}
1677 }
1678 }
```

`\@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n`

```
1679 \cs_new:Nn \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n
1680 {
1681 (debug) \typeout{::: @@_remove_clashing_featstr:n {#1}}
1682 \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
1683 {
1684 (debug) \typeout{:::~ Removing~ feature~ "##1;"}
1685 \tl_gremove_all:Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {##1;}
1686 }
1687 }
```

### 35.3 Initialisation

`\@@_init:` Initialisations that need to occur once per fontspec font invocation. (Some of these may be redundant. Check whether they're assigned to globally or not.)

```
1688 \cs_set:Npn \@@_init:
1689 {
1690 (debug) \typeout{: @@@_init:}
1691 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_ot_bool
1692 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1693 \@@_font_is_name:
1694 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_font_path_tl
1695 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_optical_size_tl
1696 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_ttc_index_tl
1697 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspeg_renderer_tl
1698 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspeg_defined_shapes_tl
1699 \tl_clear:N \g_@@_curr_series_tl
1700 \tl_gset_eq:NN \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl \g_fontspeg_encoding_tl
1701
1702 (*luatex)
1703 \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspeg_mode_tl {node}
1704 \int_set:Nn \luatex_prehyphenchar:D { \- } % fixme
1705 \int_zero:N \luatex_posthyphenchar:D % fixme
1706 \int_zero:N \luatex_preexhyphenchar:D % fixme
1707 \int_zero:N \luatex_postexhyphenchar:D % fixme
```

```

1708 \</luatex>
1709 }

```

`\@@_init_fontface:` Executed in `\@@_get_features:Nn`.

```

1710 \cs_new:Nn \@@_init_fontface:
1711 {
1712   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1713   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_scale_tl
1714   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1715   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_hexcol_tl \g_@@_hexcol_tl
1716   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_postadjust_tl \g_@@_postadjust_tl
1717   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1718   \tl_clear:N \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1719 }

```

## 35.4 Miscellaneous

`\@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn` This macro takes a four character string and converts it to the numerical representation required for X<sub>Y</sub>TeX OpenType script/language/feature purposes. The output is stored in #1.

The reason it's ugly is because the input can be of the form of any of these: 'abcd', 'abc', 'abc ', 'ab', 'ab ', etc. (It is assumed the first two chars are *always* not spaces.) So this macro reads in the string, delimited by a space; this input is padded with `\@empty`s and anything beyond four chars is snipped. The `\@empty`s then are used to reconstruct the spaces in the string to number calculation.

For backwards compatibility this code also strips a leading + or -.

```

1720 \cs_set:Nn \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn
1721 {
1722   \@@_strip_leading_sign:Nw #1#2 \q_nil
1723 }
1724 \cs_set:Npn \@@_strip_leading_sign:Nw #1#2#3 \q_nil
1725 {
1726   \bool_if:nTF { \str_if_eq_p:nn {#2} {+} || \str_if_eq_p:nn {#2} {-} }
1727     { \@@_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #3 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil }
1728     { \@@_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil }
1729 }
1730 \cs_set:Npn \@@_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3#4#5#6 \q_nil
1731 {
1732   \int_set:Nn #1
1733   {
1734     `#2 * "10000000
1735     + `#3 * "100000
1736     + \ifx \c_empty_tl #4 32 \else `#4 \fi * "100
1737     + \ifx \c_empty_tl #5 32 \else `#5 \fi
1738   }
1739 }
1740 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn {No}

```

## 36 OpenType definitions code

fine\_opentype\_feature\_group:n

```
1741 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n
1742 {
1743   \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype} { #1 .multichoice: }
1744 }
```

define\_opentype\_feature:nnnnn

```
#1 : Feature key
#2 : Feature option val
#3 : Check feature — leave empty for no check
#4 : Exact tag string to activate — leave empty for disable only
#5 : Tags to remove (clist)
```

```
1745 \cs_new:Nn \@@_feat_prop_add:nn
1746 {
1747   \tl_if_empty:nF {#1}
1748   {
1749     \prop_if_in:NnF \g_@@_OT_features_prop {#1}
1750     {
1751       \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_OT_features_prop {#1} {#2}
1752     }
1753   }
1754 }
1755 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn
1756 {
1757   \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {#3} {#1\,=#2}
1758   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
1759   {
1760     \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
1761     {
1762       #1/#2 .code:n =
1763       { \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n {#5} }
1764     }
1765   }
1766   {
1767     \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
1768     {
1769       #1/#2 .code:n =
1770       {
1771 (debug) \typeout{::::::::::fontspec-opentype~#1/#2~=#3/#4/#5}
1772         \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {#3} {#4} {#5}
1773       }
1774     }
1775   }
1776 }
```

fine\_opentype\_onoffreset:nnnnn

```
#1 : Feature key
#2 : Feature option val
#3 : Check feature
#4 : Tag prefix to activate: +#4 = on, -#4 = off.
```

#5 : Tags to remove in the on case (clist)

```
1777 \cs_new:Nn \@@_feat_off:n {#10ff}
1778 \cs_new:Nn \@@_feat_reset:n {#1Reset}
```

```
1779 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn
```

```
1780 {
```

```
1781   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} {#2} {#3} {+#4} {#5}
```

```
1782   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} { \@@_feat_off:n {#2} } {#3} {-#4} {
```

```
1783   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} { \@@_feat_reset:n {#2} } {} {} {+#4, -
```

```
1784 }
```

```
define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn
```

#1 : Feature key

#2 : Feature option val

#3 : Check feature

#4 : Exact tag string to activate

#5 : Tags to remove (clist)

```
1785 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn
```

```
1786 {
```

```
1787   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5}
```

```
1788   \exp_args:Nnx \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {#1} { \@@_feat_reset:n {#2} } {} {} {#4}
```

```
1789 }
```

## 36.1 Adding features when loading fonts

When remove clashing features,

1. remove the feature being added (to avoid duplicates);
2. remove the inverse of the feature (to avoid cancellation);
3. finally remove all clashing features.

```
1790 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn
```

```
1791 {
```

```
1792 <debug> \typeout{: : \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn \exp_not:n { {#1}{#2}{#3} } }
```

```
1793
```

```
1794   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_proceed_bool
```

```
1795   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_check_feat_bool
```

```
1796
```

```
1797   \tl_if_empty:nT {#1} { \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_check_feat_bool }
```

```
1798   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_check_feat_bool
```

```
1799     {
```

```
1800       \@@_check_ot_feat:nF {#1}
```

```
1801       {
```

```
1802         \@@_warning:nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1}
```

```
1803         \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_proceed_bool
```

```
1804       }
```

```
1805     }
```

```
1806
```

```
1807   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_proceed_bool
```

```
1808     {
```

```
1809       \exp_args:Nx \@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n
```

```

1810         { #2 , \@_swap_plus_minus:n {#2} , #3 }
1811
1812         \@_update_featstr:n {#2}
1813     }
1814 }
1815 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@_make_OT_feature:nnn {xxx}
1816 \cs_new:Nn \@_swap_plus_minus:n { \@_swap_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1 \q_nil }
1817 \cs_new:Npn \@_swap_plus_minus_aux:Nq #1#2 \q_nil
1818 { \str_case:nn {#1} { {+} {-#2} {-} {+#2} } }

```

`\@@_check_script:nTF` This macro takes an OpenType script tag and checks if it exists in the current font. The output boolean is `\@tempswatru`. `\l_@@_script_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the script tag string.

```

1819 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@_check_script:n {TF}
1820 {
1821     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_never_check_bool
1822         { \prg_return_true: }
1823 <*/xetex>
1824 {
1825     \@_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_@@_strnum_int {#1}
1826     \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int { \XeTeXOTcountscripts \l_fontspec_font }
1827     \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
1828     \bool_set_false:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
1829     \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1830     {
1831         \ifnum \XeTeXOTscripttag\l_fontspec_font \l_tmpa_int = \l_@@_strnum_int
1832             \bool_set_true:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
1833             \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int { \l_tmpb_int }
1834         \else
1835             \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1836         \fi
1837     }
1838     \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1839 }
1840 </xetex>
1841 <*/luatex>
1842 {
1843     \directlua{fontspec.check_ot_script("\l_fontspec_font", "#1")}
1844     \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1845 }
1846 </luatex>
1847 }

```

`\@@_check_lang:nTF` This macro takes an OpenType language tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script. The output boolean is `\@tempswatru`. `\l_@@_language_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the language tag string. The script used is whatever's held in `\l_@@_script_int`. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'.

```

1848 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@_check_lang:n {TF}
1849 {
1850     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_never_check_bool

```

```

1851     { \prg_return_true: }
1852 (*xetex)
1853 {
1854   \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_@@_strnum_int {#1}
1855   \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int
1856   { \XeTeXOTcountlanguages \l_fontspec_font \l_@@_script_int }
1857   \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
1858   \bool_set_false:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
1859   \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1860   {
1861     \ifnum\XeTeXOTlanguagetag\l_fontspec_font\l_@@_script_int \l_tmpa_int =\l_@@_strnum_int
1862       \bool_set_true:N \l__fontspec_check_bool
1863       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1864     \else
1865       \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1866     \fi
1867   }
1868   \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1869 }
1870 </xetex>
1871 (*luatex)
1872 {
1873   \directlua
1874   {
1875     fontspec.check_ot_lang( "l_fontspec_font", "#1", "\l_fontspec_script_tl" )
1876   }
1877   \bool_if:NTF \l__fontspec_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1878 }
1879 </luatex>
1880 }

```

`\@@_check_ot_feat:nTF` This macro takes an OpenType feature tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script/language. `\l_@@_strnum_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the feature tag string. The script used is whatever's held in `\l_@@_script_int`. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'. The language used is `\l_@@_language_int`, by default `Q`, the 'default language'.

```

1881 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_check_ot_feat:n {TF,F}
1882 {
1883   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_never_check_bool
1884   { \prg_return_true: }
1885 (*xetex)
1886 {
1887 <debug>\typeout{:~ fontspec_check_ot_feat:n~ {#1}}
1888   \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int
1889   {
1890     \XeTeXOTcountfeatures \l_fontspec_font
1891                           \l_@@_script_int
1892                           \l_@@_language_int
1893   }
1894   \@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_@@_strnum_int {#1}
1895   \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int

```

```

1896 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_check_bool
1897 \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1898 {
1899   \ifnum\XeTeXOTfeaturetag\l_fontspec_font\l_@@_script_int\l_@@_language_int
1900     \l_tmpa_int =\l_@@_strnum_int
1901     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_check_bool
1902     \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1903   \else
1904     \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1905   \fi
1906 }
1907 \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1908 }
1909 \xetex
1910 \*luatex
1911 {
1912 \debug\typeout{:~ fontspec_check_ot_feat:n~ {#1}}
1913 \directlua
1914 {
1915   fontspec.check_ot_feat(
1916     "l_fontspec_font", "#1",
1917     "\l_fontspec_lang_tl", "\l_fontspec_script_tl"
1918   )
1919 }
1920 \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_check_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
1921 }
1922 \luatex
1923 }

```

## 36.2 OpenType feature information

```

1924 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {aalt}{Access-All-Alternates}
1925 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {abvf}{Above-base-Forms}
1926 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {abvm}{Above-base-Mark-Positioning}
1927 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {abvs}{Above-base-Substitutions}
1928 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {afrc}{Alternative-Fractions}
1929 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {akhn}{Akhands}
1930 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {blwf}{Below-base-Forms}
1931 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {blwm}{Below-base-Mark-Positioning}
1932 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {blws}{Below-base-Substitutions}
1933 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {calt}{Contextual-Alternates}
1934 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {case}{Case-Sensitive-Forms}
1935 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {ccmp}{Glyph-Composition~/~Decomposition}
1936 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cfar}{Conjunct-Form-After-Ro}
1937 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cjct}{Conjunct-Forms}
1938 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {clig}{Contextual-Ligatures}
1939 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cpct}{Centered-CJK-Punctuation}
1940 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {csp}{Capital-Spacing}
1941 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {csw}{Contextual-Swash}
1942 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {curs}{Cursive-Positioning}
1943 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop {cvn}{Character-Variant-~$N$}

```



1944 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {c2pc}{Petite-Capitals-From-Capitals}  
1945 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {c2sc}{Small-Capitals-From-Capitals}  
1946 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {dist}{Distances}  
1947 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {dlig}{Discretionary-Ligatures}  
1948 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {dnom}{Denominators}  
1949 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {dntls}{Dotless-Forms}  
1950 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {expt}{Expert-Forms}  
1951 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {falt}{Final-Glyph-on-Line-Alternates}  
1952 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {fin2}{Terminal-Forms-\#2}  
1953 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {fin3}{Terminal-Forms-\#3}  
1954 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {fina}{Terminal-Forms}  
1955 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {flac}{Flattened-accent-forms}  
1956 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {frac}{Fractions}  
1957 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {fwid}{Full-Widths}  
1958 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {half}{Half-Forms}  
1959 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {haln}{Halant-Forms}  
1960 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {halt}{Alternate-Half-Widths}  
1961 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {hist}{Historical-Forms}  
1962 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {hkna}{Horizontal-Kana-Alternates}  
1963 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {hlig}{Historical-Ligatures}  
1964 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {hngl}{Hangul}  
1965 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {hojo}{Hojo-Kanji-Forms}  
1966 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {hwid}{Half-Widths}  
1967 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {init}{Initial-Forms}  
1968 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {isol}{Isolated-Forms}  
1969 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ital}{Italics}  
1970 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {jalt}{Justification-Alternates}  
1971 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {jp78}{JIS78-Forms}  
1972 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {jp83}{JIS83-Forms}  
1973 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {jp90}{JIS90-Forms}  
1974 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {jp04}{JIS2004-Forms}  
1975 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {kern}{Kerning}  
1976 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {lfbd}{Left-Bounds}  
1977 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {liga}{Standard-Ligatures}  
1978 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ljmo}{Leading-Jamo-Forms}  
1979 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {lnum}{Lining-Figures}  
1980 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {locl}{Localized-Forms}  
1981 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ltra}{Left-to-right-alternates}  
1982 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ltrm}{Left-to-right-mirrored-forms}  
1983 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {mark}{Mark-Positioning}  
1984 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {med2}{Medial-Forms-\#2}  
1985 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {medi}{Medial-Forms}  
1986 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {mgrk}{Mathematical-Greek}  
1987 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {mkmk}{Mark-to-Mark-Positioning}  
1988 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {mset}{Mark-Positioning-via-Substitution}  
1989 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {nalt}{Alternate-Annotation-Forms}  
1990 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {nlck}{NLC-Kanji-Forms}  
1991 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {nukt}{Nukta-Forms}  
1992 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {numr}{Numerators}  
1993 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {onum}{Oldstyle-Figures}  
1994 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {opbd}{Optical-Bounds}

1995 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ordn}{Ordinals}  
1996 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ornm}{Ornaments}  
1997 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {palt}{Proportional~Alternate~Widths}  
1998 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pcap}{Petite~Capitals}  
1999 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pkna}{Proportional~Kana}  
2000 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pnum}{Proportional~Figures}  
2001 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pref}{Pre~Base~Forms}  
2002 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pres}{Pre~base~Substitutions}  
2003 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pstf}{Post~base~Forms}  
2004 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {psts}{Post~base~Substitutions}  
2005 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {pwid}{Proportional~Widths}  
2006 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {qwid}{Quarter~Widths}  
2007 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rand}{Randomize}  
2008 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rclt}{Required~Contextual~Alternates}  
2009 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rkrf}{Rakar~Forms}  
2010 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rlig}{Required~Ligatures}  
2011 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rphf}{Reph~Forms}  
2012 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rtbd}{Right~Bounds}  
2013 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rtla}{Right~to~left~alternates}  
2014 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rtlm}{Right~to~left~mirrored~forms}  
2015 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ruby}{Ruby~Notation~Forms}  
2016 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {rvrn}{Required~Variation~Alternates}  
2017 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {salt}{Stylistic~Alternates}  
2018 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {sinf}{Scientific~Inferiors}  
2019 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {size}{Optical~size}  
2020 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {smcp}{Small~Capitals}  
2021 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {smp1}{Simplified~Forms}  
2022 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ssNN}{Stylistic~Set~\$N\$}  
2023 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {ssty}{Math~script~style~alternates}  
2024 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {stch}{Stretching~Glyph~Decomposition}  
2025 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {subs}{Subscript}  
2026 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {supS}{Superscript}  
2027 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {swsh}{Swash}  
2028 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {titl}{Titling}  
2029 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {tjmo}{Trailing~Jamo~Forms}  
2030 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {tnam}{Traditional~Name~Forms}  
2031 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {tnum}{Tabular~Figures}  
2032 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {trad}{Traditional~Forms}  
2033 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {twid}{Third~Widths}  
2034 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {unic}{Unicase}  
2035 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {valt}{Alternate~Vertical~Metrics}  
2036 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vatu}{Vattu~Variants}  
2037 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vert}{Vertical~Writing}  
2038 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vhal}{Alternate~Vertical~Half~Metrics}  
2039 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vjmo}{Vowel~Jamo~Forms}  
2040 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vkna}{Vertical~Kana~Alternates}  
2041 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vkrn}{Vertical~Kerning}  
2042 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vpal}{Proportional~Alternate~Vertical~M}  
2043 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vrt2}{Vertical~Alternates~and~Rotation}  
2044 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {vrtr}{Vertical~Alternates~for~Rotation}  
2045 \prop\_gput:Nnn \g\_@@\_all\_opentype\_feature\_names\_prop {zero}{Slashed~Zero}

## 37 Graphite/AAT code

`@@_define_aat_feature_group:n`

```
2046 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n
2047 { \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat} { #1 .multichoice: } }
```

`\@@_define_aat_feature:nmnn`

```
2048 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_aat_feature:nmnn
2049 {
2050   \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
2051   {
2052     #1/#2 .code:n = { \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn {#3}{#4} }
2053   }
2054 }
```

`\@@_make_AAT_feature:nn`

```
2055 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn
2056 {
2057   \tl_if_empty:NTF {#1}
2058   { \@@_warning:n {aat-feature-not-exist} }
2059   {
2060     \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:nmTF {#1}{#2}
2061     {
2062       \@@_update_featstr:n {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl}
2063     }
2064     { \@@_warning:nx {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1,#2} }
2065   }
2066 }
```

`_make_AAT_feature_string:nmTF`

This macro takes the numerical codes for a font feature and creates a specified macro containing the string required in the font definition to turn that feature on or off. Used primarily in [...], but also used to check if small caps exists in the requested font (see page 113).

For exclusive selectors, it's easy; just grab the string: For *non*-exclusive selectors, it's a little more complex. If the selector is even, it corresponds to switching the feature on. If the selector is *odd*, it corresponds to switching the feature off. But X<sub>Y</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X doesn't return a selector string for this number, since the feature is defined for the 'switching on' value. So we need to check the selector of the previous number, and then prefix the feature string with ! to denote the switch.

Finally, save out the complete feature string in `\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl`.

```
2067 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_make_AAT_feature_string:nn {TF,T,F}
2068 {
2069   \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \XeTeXfeaturename \l_fontspec_font #1 }
2070   \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_tl
2071   { \prg_return_false: }
2072   {
2073     \int_compare:nTF { \XeTeXisexclusivefeature\l_fontspec_font #1 > 0 }
2074     {
2075       \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl { \XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
2076     }

```

```

2077 {
2078   \int_if_even:nTF {#2}
2079   {
2080     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
2081   }
2082   {
2083     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl
2084     {
2085       \XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space \numexpr#2-1\relax
2086     }
2087     \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_put_left:Nn \l_tmpb_tl {!} }
2088   }
2089 }
2090 \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpb_tl
2091 { \prg_return_false: }
2092 {
2093   \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl { \l_tmpa_tl = \l_tmpb_tl }
2094   \prg_return_true:
2095 }
2096 }
2097 }

```

## 38 Font loading (keyval) definitions

This is the tedious section where we correlate all possible (eventually) font feature requests with their X<sub>Y</sub>TeX representations.

```

2098 \clist_set:Nn \g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist
2099 {
2100   fontspec, fontspec-opentype, fontspec-aat,
2101   fontspec-preparse, fontspec-preparse-cfg, fontspec-preparse-external, fontspec-preparse-n
2102   fontspec-renderer
2103 }
2104 \cs_new:Nn \@@_keys_define_code:nnn
2105 {
2106   \keys_define:nn {#1} { #2 .code:n = {#3} }
2107 }

```

For catching features that cannot be used in `\addfontfeatures`:

```

2108 \cs_new:Nn \@@_aff_error:n
2109 {
2110   \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-addfeatures} {#1}
2111   { \@@_error:nx {not-in-addfontfeatures} {#1} }
2112 }

```

### 38.0.1 Pre-parsing naming information

These features are extracted from the font feature list before all others.

### Don't load font config file

```
2113 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-cfg} {IgnoreFontspecFile}
2114 {
2115   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
2116 }
2117 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {IgnoreFontspecFile}
2118 {
2119   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_fontcfg_bool
2120 }
```

**Path** For fonts that aren't installed in the system. If no argument is given, the font is located with `kpsewhich`; it's either in the current directory or the  $\TeX$  tree. Otherwise, the argument given defines the file path of the font.

```
2121 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Path}
2122 {
2123   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2124   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_noit_bool
2125   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_external_bool
2126   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_font_path_tl {#1}
2127   \@@_font_is_file:
2128 (*xetexx)
2129   \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
2130 (/xetexx)
2131 }
2132 \aliasfontfeature{Path}{ExternalLocation}
2133 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Path} {}
```

**Extension** For fonts that aren't installed in the system. Specifies the font extension to use.

```
2134 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Extension}
2135 {
2136   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_extension_tl {#1}
2137   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_external_bool
2138   {
2139     \keys_set:nn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Path}
2140   }
2141 }
2142 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_extension_tl
2143 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Extension} {}
```

### 38.0.2 Pre-parsed features

After the font name(s) have been sorted out, now need to extract any renderer/font configuration features that need to be processed before all other font features.

**Renderer** This feature must be processed before all others (the other font shape and features options are also pre-parsed for convenience) because the renderer determines the format of the features and even whether certain features are available.

```
2144 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-renderer}
```

```

2145 {
2146   Renderer .choices:nn =
2147     {AAT,ICU,OpenType,Graphite,Full,Basic}
2148     {
2149       \int_compare:nTF {\l_keys_choice_int <= 4} {
2150 (*xetexx)
2151       \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
2152         { g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
2153       \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { \l_fontspec_renderer_tl }
2154 }/xetexx)
2155 (*luatex)
2156   \@@_warning:nx {only-xetex-feature} {Renderer=AAT/OpenType/Graphite}
2157 }/luatex)
2158 }
2159 {
2160 (*xetexx)
2161   \@@_warning:nx {only-luatex-feature} {Renderer=Full/Basic}
2162 }/xetexx)
2163 (*luatex)
2164   \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_mode_tl
2165     { g_fontspec_mode_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
2166   \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { mode=\l_fontspec_mode_tl }
2167 }/luatex)
2168 }
2169 }
2170 }
2171 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_AAT} {/AAT}
2172 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ICU} {/OT}
2173 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_OpenType} {/OT}
2174 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_Graphite} {/GR}
2175 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Full} {node}
2176 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Basic} {base}

```

**OpenType script/language** See later for the resolutions from fontspec features to OpenType definitions.

```

2177 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {Script}
2178 {
2179 (xetexx)   \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
2180   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {#1}
2181 }

```

Exactly the same:

```

2182 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {Language}
2183 {
2184 (xetexx)   \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
2185   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {#1}
2186 }

```

**TTC font index**

```

2187 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {FontIndex}
2188 {

```

```

2189 \str_if_eq_x:nnF { \str_lower_case:f {\l_@@_extension_tl} } {.ttc}
2190 { \@@_warning:n {font-index-needs-ttc} }
2191 <xetex> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {:#1}
2192 <luatex> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {(#1)}
2193 }
2194 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontIndex}
2195 {
2196 <xetex> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {:#1}
2197 <luatex> \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_ttc_index_tl {(#1)}
2198 }

```

### 38.0.3 Bold/italic choosing options

The `Bold`, `Italic`, and `BoldItalic` features are for defining explicitly the bold and italic fonts used in a font family.

**Bold (NFSS) Series** By default, `fontspec` uses the default bold series, `\bfdefault`. We want to be able to make this extensible.

```

2199 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSeries}
2200 {
2201 \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl { #1 }
2202 \seq_gput_right:Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq { #1 }
2203 }

```

**Fonts Upright:**

```

2204 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {UprightFont}
2205 {
2206 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_up_tl {#1}
2207 }
2208 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {FontName}
2209 {
2210 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_up_tl {#1}
2211 }

```

**Bold:**

```

2212 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldFont}
2213 {
2214 \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
2215 {
2216 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2217 }
2218 {
2219 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2220 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl {#1}
2221
2222 \seq_if_empty:NT \g_@@_bf_series_seq
2223 {
2224 \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
2225 \seq_put_right:Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq {\bfdefault}
2226 }
2227 \tl_if_eq:oxT \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}

```

```

2228     { \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl }
2229
2230 (debug)\typeout{Setting-bold-font~"\l_@@_curr_bfname_tl"~with~series~"\g_@@_curr_series_tl"}
2231
2232     \prop_put:NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
2233     {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
2234
2235   }
2236 }

```

Same for italic:

```

2237 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {ItalicFont}
2238 {
2239   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
2240   {
2241     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_noit_bool
2242   }
2243   {
2244     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_noit_bool
2245     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_it_tl {#1}
2246   }
2247 }

```

Simpler for bold+italic & slanted:

```

2248 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {BoldItalicFont}
2249 {
2250   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
2251 }
2252 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {SlantedFont}
2253 {
2254   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_sl_tl {#1}
2255 }
2256 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {BoldSlantedFont}
2257 {
2258   \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl {#1}
2259 }

```

Small caps isn't pre-parsed because it can vary with others above:

```

2260 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFont}
2261 {
2262   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
2263   {
2264     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
2265   }
2266   {
2267     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
2268     \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_fontname_sc_tl {#1}
2269   }
2270 }

```

## Features

```

2271 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {UprightFeatures}

```



```

2272 {
2273   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist {#1}
2274 }
2275 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {BoldFeatures}
2276 {
2277   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {#1}
2278 }
2279 % \prop_put:NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
2280 %   {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
2281 }
2282 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {ItalicFeatures}
2283 {
2284   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {#1}
2285 }
2286 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {BoldItalicFeatures}
2287 {
2288   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {#1}
2289 }
2290 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {SlantedFeatures}
2291 {
2292   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist {#1}
2293 }
2294 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {BoldSlantedFeatures}
2295 {
2296   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist {#1}
2297 }
2298 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFeatures}
2299 {
2300   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2301   {
2302     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist {#1}
2303   }
2304 }
2305 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {SizeFeatures}
2306 {
2307   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
2308   \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist { SizeFeatures = {#1} }
2309 }
2310 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-nested} {SizeFeatures}
2311 {
2312   \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
2313   \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_this_font_tl
2314   { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl { -- } } % needs to be non-empty as a flag
2315 }
2316 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare-nested} {Font}
2317 {
2318   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl {#1}
2319 }
2320 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SizeFeatures}

```

```

2321 {
2322 % dummy
2323 }
2324 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Font}
2325 {
2326 % dummy
2327 }

2328 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Size}
2329 {
2330 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_size_tl {#1}
2331 }
2332 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Font}
2333 {
2334 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_sizedfont_tl {#1}
2335 }

```

### 38.0.4 Font-independent features

These features can be applied to any font.

**NFSS encoding** For the very brave.

```

2336 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {NFSSEncoding}
2337 {
2338 \tl_gset:Nx \l_@@_nfss_enc_tl { #1 }
2339 }

```

**NFSS family** Interactions with other packages will sometimes require setting the NFSS family explicitly. (By default fontspec auto-generates one based on the font name.)

```

2340 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-prepare} {NFSSFFamily}
2341 {
2342 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl { #1 }
2343 \cs_undefine:c {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
2344 \tl_if_exist:NT \l_fontspec_family_tl
2345 { \cs_undefine:c {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} }
2346 }

```

**NFSS series/shape** This option looks similar in name but has a very different function.

```

2347 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontFace}
2348 {
2349 \tl_set:No \l_@@_arg_tl { \use_iii:nnn #1 }
2350 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_this_feat_tl \l_@@_arg_tl
2351 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_font_tl
2352 \int_compare:nT { \clist_count:N \l_@@_arg_tl = 1 }
2353 {
2354 (*debug)
2355 \typeout{FontFace~ parsing:~ one~ clist~ item}
2356 (/debug)

```

```

2357 \tl_if_in:NnF \l_@@_arg_tl {=}
2358 {
2359 (*debug)
2360 \typeout{FontFace~ parsing:~ no~ equals~ =>~ font~ name~ only}
2361 </debug)
2362 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_this_font_tl \l_@@_arg_tl
2363 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_feat_tl
2364 }
2365 }
2366
2367 \@@_add_nfssfont:nmnn
2368 {\use_i:nnn #1}{\use_ii:nnn #1}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{\l_@@_this_feat_tl}
2369 }

```

**Scale** If the input isn't one of the pre-defined string options, then it's gotta be numerical. `\fontspec_calc_scale:n` does all the work in the auto-scaling cases.

```

2370 \@@_keys_define_code:nmnn {fontspec} {Scale}
2371 {
2372 \str_case:nnF {#1}
2373 {
2374 {MatchLowercase} { \@@_calc_scale:n {5} }
2375 {MatchUppercase} { \@@_calc_scale:n {8} }
2376 }
2377 { \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl {#1} }
2378 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl { s*[\l_@@_scale_tl] }
2379 }

```

`\@@_calc_scale:n` This macro calculates the amount of scaling between the default roman font and the (default shape of) the font being selected such that the font dimension that is input is equal for both. The only font dimensions that justify this are 5 (lowercase height) and 8 (uppercase height in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX).

This script is executed for every extra shape, which seems wasteful, but allows alternate italic shapes from a separate font, say, to be loaded and to be auto-scaled correctly. Even if this would be ugly.

To begin, change to `\rmfamily` but use internal commands in case `csermfamily` has been overwritten. (Note that changing `\rmfamily` with `fontspec` resets `\encodingdefault` appropriately.)

```

2380 \cs_new:Nn \@@_calc_scale:n
2381 {
2382 \group_begin:
2383
2384 \fontencoding { \encodingdefault }
2385 \fontfamily { \rmdefault }
2386 \selectfont
2387
2388 \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN \l_@@_tmpa_dim {#1} \font
2389 \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN \l_@@_tmpb_dim {#1} \l_fontspeg_font
2390
2391 \tl_gset:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl
2392 {

```

```

2393     \fp_eval:n { \dim_to_fp:n {\l_@@_tmpa_dim} /
2394                 \dim_to_fp:n {\l_@@_tmpb_dim} }
2395   }
2396
2397   \@@_info:n {set-scale}
2398 \group_end:
2399 }

```

`\@@_set_font_dimen:NnN` This function sets the dimension #1 (for font #3) to 'fontdimen' #2 for either font dimension 5 (x-height) or 8 (cap-height). If, for some reason, these return an incorrect 'zero' value (as `\fontdimen8` might for a .tfm font), then we cheat and measure the height of a glyph. We assume in this case that the font contains either an 'X' or an 'x'.

```

2400 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN
2401 {
2402   \dim_set:Nn #1 { \fontdimen #2 #3 }
2403   \dim_compare:nNnT #1 = {0pt}
2404   {
2405     \settoheight #1
2406     {
2407       \str_if_eq:nnTF {#3} {\font} \rmfamily #3
2408       \int_case:nnF #2
2409       {
2410         {5} {x} % x-height
2411         {8} {X} % cap-height
2412       } {?} % "else" clause; never reached.
2413     }
2414   }
2415 }

```

**Inter-word space** These options set the relevant `\fontdimens` for the font being loaded.

```

2416 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {WordSpace}
2417 {
2418   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2419   { \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,,,\q_stop }
2420 }
2421 \@@_aff_error:n {WordSpace}

```

`\_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w` This macro determines if the input to `WordSpace` is of the form `{X}` or `{X,Y,Z}` and executes the font scaling. If the former input, it executes `{X,X,X}`.

```

2422 \cs_set:Npn \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,#2,#3,#4 \q_stop
2423 {
2424   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
2425   {
2426     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
2427     {
2428       \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
2429       \fontdimen 3 \font = #1 \fontdimen 3 \font
2430       \fontdimen 4 \font = #1 \fontdimen 4 \font
2431     }

```

```

2432 }
2433 {
2434 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
2435 {
2436 \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
2437 \fontdimen 3 \font = #2 \fontdimen 3 \font
2438 \fontdimen 4 \font = #3 \fontdimen 4 \font
2439 }
2440 }
2441 }

```

**Punctuation space** Scaling factor for the nominal `\fontdimen#7`.

```

2442 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {PunctuationSpace}
2443 {
2444 \str_case:x:nnF {#1}
2445 {
2446 {WordSpace}
2447 {
2448 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
2449 { \fontdimen 7 \font = 0 \fontdimen 2 \font }
2450 }
2451 {TwiceWordSpace}
2452 {
2453 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
2454 { \fontdimen 7 \font = 1 \fontdimen 2 \font }
2455 }
2456 }
2457 {
2458 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
2459 { \fontdimen 7 \font = #1 \fontdimen 7 \font }
2460 }
2461 }
2462 \@@_aff_error:n {PunctuationSpace}

```

**Secret hook into the font-adjustment code**

```

2463 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontAdjustment}
2464 {
2465 \tl_put_right:Nx \l_@@_postadjust_tl {#1}
2466 }

```

**Letterspacing**

```

2467 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {LetterSpace}
2468 {
2469 \@@_update_featstr:n {letterspace=#1}
2470 }

```

**Hyphenation character** This feature takes one of three arguments: `None`, `<glyph>`, or `<slot>`. If the input isn't the first, and it's one character, then it's the second; otherwise, it's the third.

LuaTeX decouples hyphenation from font settings, so only HyphenChar=None works for that engine.

```

2471 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {HyphenChar}
2472 {
2473   \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {None}
2474   {
2475     \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
2476       { \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn \font {-1} }
2477   }
2478   {
2479     \@@_warning:nx {only-xetex-feature} {HyphenChar}
2480
2481     \tl_if_single:nTF {#1}
2482       { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl {`#1} }
2483       { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl { #1 } }
2484
2485     \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {\l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl}
2486     {
2487       \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
2488         { \@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn \font { \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl } }
2489     }
2490     { \@@_error:nx {no-glyph}{#1} }
2491
2492   }
2493 }
2494 \@@_aff_error:n {HyphenChar}

```

**Color** Hooks into pkgxcolor, which names its colours \color@<name>.

```

2495 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Color}
2496 {
2497   \cs_if_exist:cTF { \token_to_str:N \color@ #1 }
2498   {
2499     \convertcolorspec{named}{#1}{HTML}\l_@@_hexcol_tl
2500   }
2501   {
2502     \int_compare:nTF { \tl_count:n {#1} == 6 }
2503     { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1} }
2504     {
2505       \int_compare:nTF { \tl_count:n {#1} == 8 }
2506       { \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1 }
2507       {
2508         \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2509         { \@@_warning:nx {bad-colour} {#1} }
2510       }
2511     }
2512   }
2513 }
2514 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
2515 {
2516   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1#2#3#4#5#6}

```

```

2517 \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
2518 {
2519   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2520   { \@@_warning:nx {opa-twice-col} {#7#8} }
2521 }
2522 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_opacity_tl {#7#8}
2523 }
2524 \aliasfontfeature{Color}{Colour}

2525 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Opacity}
2526 {
2527   \int_set:Nn \l_@@_tmp_int {255}
2528   \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn \l_@@_tmp_int { #1 }
2529   \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
2530   {
2531     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2532     { \@@_warning:nx {opa-twice} {#1} }
2533   }
2534   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_opacity_tl
2535   {
2536     \int_compare:nT { \l_@@_tmp_int <= "F } {0} % zero pad
2537     \int_to_hex:n { \l_@@_tmp_int }
2538   }
2539 }

```

### Mapping

```

2540 (*xetex)
2541 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-aat} {Mapping}
2542 {
2543   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl { #1 }
2544 }
2545 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype} {Mapping}
2546 {
2547   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl { #1 }
2548 }
2549 (/xetex)
2550 (*luatex)
2551 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype} {Mapping}
2552 {
2553   \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {tex-text}
2554   {
2555     \@@_warning:n {no-mapping-ligtx}
2556     \msg_redirect_name:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtx} {none}
2557     \keys_set:nn {fontspec-opentype} { Ligatures=TeX }
2558   }
2559   { \@@_warning:n {no-mapping} }
2560 }
2561 (/luatex)

```

### 38.0.5 Continuous font axes

```

2562 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Weight}

```

```

2563 {
2564   \@@_update_featstr:n{weight=#1}
2565 }
2566 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Width}
2567 {
2568   \@@_update_featstr:n{width=#1}
2569 }
2570 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {OpticalSize}
2571 \xetexx
2572 {
2573   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
2574   {
2575     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
2576   }
2577   {
2578     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_mm_bool
2579     {
2580       \@@_update_featstr:n { optical size = #1 }
2581     }
2582   }
2583   \bool_if:nT { !\l_@@_ot_bool && !\l_@@_mm_bool }
2584   {
2585     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2586     { \@@_warning:n {no-opticals} }
2587   }
2588 }
2589 \xetexx
2590 \luatex
2591 {
2592   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
2593 }
2594 \luatex

```

### 38.0.6 Font transformations

These are to be specified to apply directly to a font shape:

```

2595 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2596 {
2597   FakeSlant .code:n =
2598   {
2599     \@@_update_featstr:n{slant=#1}
2600   },
2601   FakeSlant .default:n = {0.2}
2602 }
2603 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2604 {
2605   FakeStretch .code:n =
2606   {
2607     \@@_update_featstr:n{extend=#1}
2608   },
2609   FakeStretch .default:n = {1.2}
2610 }

```



```

2611 (*xetex)
2612 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2613 {
2614   FakeBold .code:n =
2615     {
2616       \@@_update_featstr:n {embolden=#1}
2617     },
2618   FakeBold .default:n = {1.5}
2619 }
2620 (/xetex)
2621 (*luatex)
2622 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2623 {
2624   FakeBold .code:n = { \@@_warning:n {fakebold-only-xetex} }
2625 }
2626 (/luatex)

```

These are to be given to a shape that has no real bold/italic to signal that fontspec should automatically create ‘fake’ shapes.

The behaviour is currently that only if both `AutoFakeSlant` and `AutoFakeBold` are specified, the bold italic is also faked.

These features presently *override* real shapes found in the font; in the future I’d like these features to be ignored in this case, instead. (This is just a bit harder to program in the current design of fontspec.)

```

2627 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2628 {
2629   AutoFakeSlant .code:n =
2630     {
2631       \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2632       {
2633         \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_fake_slant_tl {#1}
2634         \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2635         \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_it_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2636         \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_noit_bool
2637
2638         \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_fake_embolden_tl
2639         {
2640           \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
2641             {FakeBold=\l_@@_fake_embolden_tl}
2642           \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2643           \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2644         }
2645       }
2646     },
2647   AutoFakeSlant .default:n = {0.2}
2648 }

```

Same but reversed:

```

2649 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2650 {
2651   AutoFakeBold .code:n =
2652     {

```

```

2653 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2654 {
2655   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_fake_embolden_tl {#1}
2656   \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {FakeBold=#1}
2657   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bf_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2658   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2659
2660   \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_fake_slant_tl
2661   {
2662     \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
2663     {FakeSlant=\l_@@_fake_slant_tl}
2664     \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeBold=#1}
2665     \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2666   }
2667 }
2668 },
2669 AutoFakeBold .default:n = {1.5}
2670 }

```

### 38.0.7 Raw feature string

This allows savvy X<sub>Y</sub>TeX-ers to input font features manually if they have already memorised the OpenType abbreviations and don't mind not having error checking.

```

2671 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype} {RawFeature}
2672 {
2673   \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}
2674 }
2675 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-aat} {RawFeature}
2676 {
2677   \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}
2678 }

```

## 38.1 OpenType feature definitions

```

2679 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {salt} { Alternate\,=\,$N$ }
2680 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {nalt} { Annotation\,=\,$N$ }
2681 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {ornm} { Ornament\,=\,$N$ }
2682 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {cvNN} { CharacterVariant\,=\,$N$:$M$ }
2683 \@@_feat_prop_add:nn {ssNN} { StylisticSet\,=\,$N$ }

```

## 38.2 Regular key=val / tag definitions

### 38.2.1 Ligatures

```

2684 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Ligatures}
2685 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Ligatures} {ResetAll} {} {}
2686 {
2687   +dlig,-dlig,+rliq,-rliq,+liga,-liga,+dlig,-dlig,+clig,-clig,+hlig,-hlig,
2688 (xetex) mapping = tex-text
2689 (luatex) +tlig,-tlig
2690 }
2691 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Required} {rliq} {rliq} {}

```

```

2692 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Common}      {liga} {liga} {}
2693 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Rare}       {dlig} {dlig} {}
2694 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Discretionary} {dlig} {dlig} {}
2695 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Contextual}  {clig} {clig} {}
2696 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {Historic}   {hlig} {hlig} {}

```

Emulate CM extra ligatures.

```

2697 \< *xetexx
2698 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2699 {
2700   Ligatures / TeX .code:n = { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl {tex-text} },
2701   Ligatures / TeXReset .code:n = { \tl_clear:N \l_@@_mapping_tl },
2702 }
2703 \< /xetexx
2704 \luatex\@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn {Ligatures} {TeX} {} { +tlig } {}

```

### 38.2.2 Letters

```

2705 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Letters}
2706 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Letters} {ResetAll} {} {}
2707 {
2708   +case,+smcp,+pcap,+c2sc,+c2pc,+unic,+rand,
2709   -case,-smcp,-pcap,-c2sc,-c2pc,-unic,-rand
2710 }
2711 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {Uppercase} {case} {case} {+smcp,+pcap,+c2sc,+c2pc,+unic,+rand}
2712 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {SmallCaps} {smcp} {smcp} {+pcap,+unic,+rand}
2713 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {PetiteCaps} {pcap} {pcap} {+smcp,+unic,+rand}
2714 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {UppercaseSmallCaps} {c2sc} {c2sc} {+c2pc,+unic,+rand}
2715 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {UppercasePetiteCaps} {c2pc} {c2pc} {+c2sc,+unic,+rand}
2716 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {Unicase} {unic} {unic} {+rand}
2717 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Letters} {Random} {rand} {rand} {+unic}

```

### 38.2.3 Numbers

```

2718 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Numbers}
2719 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Numbers} {ResetAll} {} {}
2720 {
2721   +tnum,-tnum,
2722   +pnum,-pnum,
2723   +onum,-onum,
2724   +lnum,-lnum,
2725   +zero,-zero,
2726   +anum,-anum,
2727 }
2728 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Monospaced} {tnum} {tnum} {+pnum,-pnum}
2729 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Proportional} {pnum} {pnum} {+tnum,-tnum}
2730 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Lowercase} {onum} {onum} {+lnum,-lnum}
2731 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Uppercase} {lnum} {lnum} {+onum,-onum}
2732 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {SlashedZero} {zero} {zero} {}
2733 \aliasfontfeatureoption {Numbers} {Monospaced} {Tabular}
2734 \aliasfontfeatureoption {Numbers} {Lowercase} {OldStyle}
2735 \aliasfontfeatureoption {Numbers} {Uppercase} {Lining}

```

luaotload provides a custom anum feature for replacing Latin (AKA Arabic) numbers with Arabic (AKA Indic-Arabic). The same feature maps to Farsi (Persian) numbers if font language is Farsi.

```
2736 \luaotload \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Numbers} {Arabic} {anum} {anum} {}
```

### 38.2.4 Vertical position

```
2737 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {VerticalPosition}
2738 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {ResetAll} {} {}
2739 {
2740   +sups,-sups,
2741   +subs,-subs,
2742   +ordn,-ordn,
2743   +numr,-numr,
2744   +dnom,-dnom,
2745   +sinf,-sinf,
2746 }

2747 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Superior} {sups} {sups} {+s}
2748 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Inferior} {subs} {subs} {+s}
2749 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Ordinal} {ordn} {ordn} {+s}
2750 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Numerator} {numr} {numr} {+s}
2751 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {Denominator} {dnom} {dnom} {+s}
2752 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {VerticalPosition} {ScientificInferior} {sinf} {sinf} {+s}
```

### 38.2.5 Contextuals

```
2753 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Contextuals}
2754 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Contextuals} {ResetAll} {} {}
2755 {
2756   +csw, -csw,
2757   +calt, -calt,
2758   +init, -init,
2759   +fina, -fina,
2760   +falt, -falt,
2761   +medi, -medi,
2762 }

2763 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {Swash} {csw} {csw} {}
2764 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {Alternate} {calt} {calt} {}
2765 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {WordInitial} {init} {init} {}
2766 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {WordFinal} {fina} {fina} {}
2767 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {LineFinal} {falt} {falt} {}
2768 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Contextuals} {Inner} {medi} {medi} {}
```

### 38.2.6 Diacritics

```
2769 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Diacritics}
2770 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Diacritics} {ResetAll} {} {}
2771 {
2772   +mark, -mark,
2773   +mkmk, -mkmk,
2774   +abvm, -abvm,
2775   +blwm, -blwm,
2776 }
```

```

2777 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {MarkToBase} {mark} {mark} {}
2778 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {MarkToMark} {mkmk} {mkmk} {}
2779 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {AboveBase} {abvm} {abvm} {}
2780 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Diacritics} {BelowBase} {blwm} {blwm} {}

```

### 38.2.7 Kerning

```

2781 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Kerning}
2782 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {ResetAll} {} {}
2783 {
2784   +csp, -csp,
2785   +kern, -kern,
2786 }
2787 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Kerning} {Uppercase} {csp} {csp} {}
2788 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {On} {kern} {+kern} {-kern}
2789 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {Off} {kern} {-kern} {+kern}
2790 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Kerning} {Reset} {} {} {+kern, -kern}

```

### 38.2.8 Fractions

```

2791 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Fractions}
2792 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {ResetAll} {} {}
2793 {
2794   +frac, -frac,
2795   +afrc, -afrc,
2796 }
2797 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {On} {frac} {+frac} {}
2798 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {Off} {frac} {-frac} {}
2799 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Fractions} {Reset} {} {} {+frac, -frac}
2800 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Fractions} {Alternate} {afrc} {afrc} {-frac}

```

### 38.2.9 Style

```

2801 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Style}
2802 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Style} {ResetAll} {} {}
2803 {
2804   +salt, -salt,
2805   +ital, -ital,
2806   +ruby, -ruby,
2807   +swsh, -swsh,
2808   +hist, -hist,
2809   +titl, -titl,
2810   +hkna, -hkna,
2811   +vkna, -vkna,
2812   +ssty=0, -ssty=0,
2813   +ssty=1, -ssty=1,
2814 }
2815 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Alternate} {salt} {salt} {}
2816 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Italic} {ital} {ital} {}
2817 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Ruby} {ruby} {ruby} {}
2818 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Swash} {swsh} {swsh} {}
2819 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Cursive} {swsh} {curs} {}
2820 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {Historic} {hist} {hist} {}
2821 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {TitlingCaps} {titl} {titl} {}

```

```

2822 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {HorizontalKana} {hkna} {hkna} {+vkna,+pkna}
2823 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {VerticalKana} {vkna} {vkna} {+hkna,+pkna}
2824 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Style} {ProportionalKana} {pkna} {pkna} {+vkna,+hkna}
2825 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Style} {MathScript} {ssty} {+ssty=0} {+ssty=1}
2826 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {Style} {MathScriptScript} {ssty} {+ssty=1} {+ssty=0}

```

### 38.2.10 CJK shape

```

2827 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {CJKShape}
2828 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {CJKShape} {ResetAll} {} {}
2829 {
2830   +trad,-trad,
2831   +smp1,-smp1,
2832   +jp78,-jp78,
2833   +jp83,-jp83,
2834   +jp90,-jp90,
2835   +jp04,-jp04,
2836   +expt,-expt,
2837   +nlck,-nlck,
2838 }
2839 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {Traditional} {trad} {trad} {+smp1,+jp78,+jp83}
2840 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {Simplified} {smp1} {smp1} {+trad,+jp78,+jp83}
2841 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1978} {jp78} {jp78} {+trad,+smp1,+jp83}
2842 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1983} {jp83} {jp83} {+trad,+smp1,+jp78}
2843 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1990} {jp90} {jp90} {+trad,+smp1,+jp78}
2844 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {JIS2004} {jp04} {jp04} {+trad,+smp1,+jp78}
2845 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {Expert} {expt} {expt} {+trad,+smp1,+jp78}
2846 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CJKShape} {NLC} {nlck} {nlck} {+trad,+smp1,+jp78}

```

### 38.2.11 Character width

```

2847 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {CharacterWidth}
2848 \@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {ResetAll} {} {}
2849 {
2850   +pwid,-pwid,
2851   +fwid,-fwid,
2852   +hwid,-hwid,
2853   +twid,-twid,
2854   +qwid,-qwid,
2855   +palt,-palt,
2856   +halt,-halt,
2857 }
2858 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Proportional} {pwid} {pwid} {-}
2859 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Full} {fwid} {fwid} {-}
2860 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Half} {hwid} {hwid} {-}
2861 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Third} {twid} {twid} {-}
2862 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {Quarter} {qwid} {qwid} {-}
2863 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateProportional} {palt} {palt} {-}
2864 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateHalf} {halt} {halt} {-}

```

### 38.2.12 Vertical

According to spec `vkern` must also activate `vpal` if available but for simplicity we don't do that here (yet?).

```
2865 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Vertical}
2866 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {RotatedGlyphs}      {vrt2} {vrt2} {+vrtr,+
2867 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {AlternatesForRotation} {vrtr} {vrtr} {+vrt2}
2868 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {Alternates}          {vert} {vert} {+vrt2}
2869 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {KanaAlternates}      {vkna} {vkna} {+hkna}
2870 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {Kerning}             {vkern} {vkern} {}
2871 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {AlternateMetrics}    {valt} {valt} {+vhal,+
2872 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {HalfMetrics}         {vhal} {vhal} {+valt,+
2873 \@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn {Vertical} {ProportionalMetrics}  {vpal} {vpal} {+valt,+
```

## 38.3 OpenType features that need numbering

### 38.3.1 Alternate

```
2874 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Alternate}
2875 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2876 {
2877   Alternate .default:n = {0} ,
2878   \luatex Alternate / Random .code:n =
2879   \luatex { \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {salt}{ +salt = random }{ } } ,
2880   Alternate / unknown .code:n =
2881   {
2882     \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
2883     { \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {salt}{ +salt = ##1 }{ } }
2884   }
2885 }
2886 \aliasfontfeature{Alternate}{StylisticAlternates}
```

### 38.3.2 Variant / StylisticSet

```
2887 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Variant}
2888 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2889 {
2890   Variant .default:n = {0} ,
2891   Variant / unknown .code:n =
2892   {
2893     \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
2894     {
2895       \@@_make_OT_feature:xxx { ss \two@digits {##1} } { +ss \two@digits {##1} } {}
2896     }
2897   }
2898 }
2899 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}
```

### 38.3.3 CharacterVariant

```
2900 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {CharacterVariant}
2901 \use:x
2902 {
```

```

2903 \cs_new:Npn \exp_not:N \fontspec_parse_cv:w
2904   ##1 \c_colon_str ##2 \c_colon_str ##3 \exp_not:N \q_nil
2905   {
2906     \@@_make_OT_feature:xxx
2907     { cv \exp_not:N \two@digits {##1} } { +cv \exp_not:N \two@digits {##1} = ##2 } {}
2908   }
2909 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2910 {
2911   CharacterVariant / unknown .code:n =
2912   {
2913     \clist_map_inline:nn {##1}
2914     {
2915       \exp_not:N \fontspec_parse_cv:w
2916       #####1 \c_colon_str 0 \c_colon_str \exp_not:N \q_nil
2917     }
2918   }
2919 }
2920 }

```

Possibilities: a:0:\q\_nil or a:b:0:\q\_nil.

### 38.3.4 Annotation

```

2921 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Annotation}
2922 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2923 {
2924   Annotation .default:n = {0} ,
2925   Annotation / unknown .code:n =
2926   {
2927     \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {nalt} {+nalt=#1} {}
2928   }
2929 }

```

### 38.3.5 Ornament

```

2930 \@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n {Ornament}
2931 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2932 {
2933   Ornament .default:n = {0} ,
2934   Ornament / unknown .code:n =
2935   {
2936     \@@_make_OT_feature:nnn {ornm} {+ornm=#1} {}
2937   }
2938 }

```

## 38.4 Script and Language

### 38.4.1 Script

```

2939 \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Script .choice: }
2940 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_new_script:nn
2941 {
2942   \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Script / #1 .code:n =
2943     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_script_exist_bool
2944     \clist_map_inline:nn {##2}

```



```

2945 {
2946   \@@_check_script:nTF {####1}
2947   {
2948     \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {####1}
2949     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
2950     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_script_exist_bool
2951     \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { script=####1 }
2952     \clist_map_break:
2953   }
2954   { }
2955 }
2956 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_script_exist_bool
2957 {
2958   \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {Latin}
2959   {
2960     \@@_warning:nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
2961   }
2962   {
2963     \@@_check_script:nTF {latn}
2964     {
2965       \@@_warning:nx {script-not-exist-latn} {#1}
2966       \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {latn}
2967       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_script_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
2968     }
2969     {
2970       \@@_warning:nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
2971     }
2972   }
2973 }
2974 }
2975 }

```

### 38.4.2 Language

```

2976 \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Language .choice: }
2977 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_new_lang:nn
2978 {
2979   \keys_define:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Language / #1 .code:n =
2980     \@@_check_lang:nTF {#2}
2981     {
2982       \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {#2}
2983       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
2984       \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=#2 }
2985     }
2986     {
2987       \@@_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {#1}
2988       \keys_set:nn { fontspec-opentype } { Language = Default }
2989     }
2990 }
2991 }

```

#### Default

```

2992 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-opentype}{ Language / Default }

```

```

2993 {
2994   \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {DFLT}
2995   \int_zero:N \l_@@_language_int
2996   \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=DFLT }
2997 }

```

**Turkish** Turns out that many fonts use ‘TUR’ as their Turkish language tag rather than the specified ‘TRK’. So we check for both:

```

2998 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-opentype}
2999 {
3000   Language / Turkish .code:n =
3001   {
3002     \@@_check_lang:nTF {TRK}
3003     {
3004       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
3005       \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TRK}
3006       \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=TRK }
3007     }
3008     {
3009       \@@_check_lang:nTF {TUR}
3010       {
3011         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_language_int {\l_@@_strnum_int}
3012         \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TUR}
3013         \tl_gset:Nn \g_@@_single_feat_tl { language=TUR }
3014       }
3015       {
3016         \@@_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {Turkish}
3017         \keys_set:nn {fontspec-opentype} {Language=Default}
3018       }
3019     }
3020   }
3021 }

```

## 38.5 Backwards compatibility

Backwards compatibility:

```

3022 \cs_new:Nn \@@_ot_compat:nn
3023 {
3024   \aliasfontfeatureoption {#1} {#20ff} {No#2}
3025 }
3026 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Rare}
3027 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Required}
3028 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Common}
3029 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Discretionary}
3030 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Contextual}
3031 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Ligatures} {Historic}
3032 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Numbers} {SlashedZero}
3033 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {Swash}
3034 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {Alternate}
3035 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {WordInitial}

```

```

3036 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {WordFinal}
3037 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {LineFinal}
3038 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Contextuals} {Inner}
3039 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {MarkToBase}
3040 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {MarkToMark}
3041 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {AboveBase}
3042 \@@_ot_compat:nn {Diacritics} {BelowBase}

```

## 38.6 Font script definitions

```

3043 \newfontscript{Adlam}{adlm}
3044 \newfontscript{Ahom}{ahom}
3045 \newfontscript{Anatolian~Hieroglyphs}{hluw}
3046 \newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
3047 \newfontscript{Armenian}{armn}
3048 \newfontscript{Avestan}{avst}
3049 \newfontscript{Balinese}{bali}
3050 \newfontscript{Bamum}{bamu}
3051 \newfontscript{Bassa~Vah}{bass}
3052 \newfontscript{Batak}{batk}
3053 \newfontscript{Bengali}{bng2,beng}
3054 \newfontscript{Bhaiksuki}{bhks}
3055 \newfontscript{Bopomofo}{bopo}
3056 \newfontscript{Brahmi}{brah}
3057 \newfontscript{Braille}{brai}
3058 \newfontscript{Buginese}{bugi}
3059 \newfontscript{Buhid}{buhd}
3060 \newfontscript{Byzantine~Music}{byzm}
3061 \newfontscript{Canadian~Syllabics}{cans}
3062 \newfontscript{Carian}{cari}
3063 \newfontscript{Caucasian~Albanian}{aghb}
3064 \newfontscript{Chakma}{cakm}
3065 \newfontscript{Cham}{cham}
3066 \newfontscript{Cherokee}{cher}
3067 \newfontscript{CJK~Ideographic}{hani}
3068 \newfontscript{Coptic}{copt}
3069 \newfontscript{Cypriot~Syllabary}{cprt}
3070 \newfontscript{Cyrillic}{cyr1}
3071 \newfontscript{Default}{DFLT}
3072 \newfontscript{Deseret}{dsrt}
3073 \newfontscript{Devanagari}{dev2,deva}
3074 \newfontscript{Duployan}{dupl}
3075 \newfontscript{Egyptian~Hieroglyphs}{egyp}
3076 \newfontscript{Elbasan}{elba}
3077 \newfontscript{Ethiopic}{ethi}
3078 \newfontscript{Georgian}{geor}
3079 \newfontscript{Glagolitic}{glag}
3080 \newfontscript{Gothic}{goth}
3081 \newfontscript{Grantha}{gran}
3082 \newfontscript{Greek}{grek}
3083 \newfontscript{Gujarati}{gjr2,gujr}

```

3084 \newfontscript{Gurmukhi}{gur2,guru}  
3085 \newfontscript{Hangul~Jamo}{jamo}  
3086 \newfontscript{Hangul}{hang}  
3087 \newfontscript{Hanunoo}{hano}  
3088 \newfontscript{Hatran}{hatr}  
3089 \newfontscript{Hebrew}{hebr}  
3090 \newfontscript{Hiragana~and~Katakana}{kana}  
3091 \newfontscript{Imperial~Aramaic}{armi}  
3092 \newfontscript{Inscriptional~Pahlavi}{phli}  
3093 \newfontscript{Inscriptional~Parthian}{prti}  
3094 \newfontscript{Javanese}{java}  
3095 \newfontscript{Kaithi}{kthi}  
3096 \newfontscript{Kannada}{knd2,knda}  
3097 \newfontscript{Kayah~Li}{kali}  
3098 \newfontscript{Kharosthi}{khar}  
3099 \newfontscript{Khmer}{khmr}  
3100 \newfontscript{Khojki}{khoj}  
3101 \newfontscript{Khudawadi}{sind}  
3102 \newfontscript{Lao}{lao~}  
3103 \newfontscript{Latin}{latn}  
3104 \newfontscript{Lepcha}{lepc}  
3105 \newfontscript{Limbu}{limb}  
3106 \newfontscript{Linear~A}{lina}  
3107 \newfontscript{Linear~B}{linb}  
3108 \newfontscript{Lisu}{lisu}  
3109 \newfontscript{Lycian}{lyci}  
3110 \newfontscript{Lydian}{lydi}  
3111 \newfontscript{Mahajani}{mahj}  
3112 \newfontscript{Malayalam}{mlm2,mlym}  
3113 \newfontscript{Mandaic}{mand}  
3114 \newfontscript{Manichaeen}{mani}  
3115 \newfontscript{Marchen}{marc}  
3116 \newfontscript{Math}{math}  
3117 \newfontscript{Meitei~Mayek}{mtei}  
3118 \newfontscript{Mende~Kikakui}{mend}  
3119 \newfontscript{Meroitic~Cursive}{merc}  
3120 \newfontscript{Meroitic~Hieroglyphs}{mero}  
3121 \newfontscript{Miao}{plrd}  
3122 \newfontscript{Modi}{modi}  
3123 \newfontscript{Mongolian}{mong}  
3124 \newfontscript{Mro}{mroo}  
3125 \newfontscript{Multani}{mult}  
3126 \newfontscript{Musical~Symbols}{musc}  
3127 \newfontscript{Myanmar}{mym2,mymr}  
3128 \newfontscript{N'Ko}{nko~}  
3129 \newfontscript{Nabataean}{nbat}  
3130 \newfontscript{Newa}{newa}  
3131 \newfontscript{Odia}{ory2,orya}  
3132 \newfontscript{Ogham}{ogam}  
3133 \newfontscript{Ol~Chiki}{olck}  
3134 \newfontscript{Old~Italic}{ital}

3135 \newfontscript{Old-Hungarian}{hung}  
3136 \newfontscript{Old-North-Arabian}{narb}  
3137 \newfontscript{Old-Permic}{perm}  
3138 \newfontscript{Old-Persian-Cuneiform}{xpeo}  
3139 \newfontscript{Old-South-Arabian}{sarb}  
3140 \newfontscript{Old-Turkic}{orkh}  
3141 \newfontscript{Osage}{osge}  
3142 \newfontscript{Osmanya}{osma}  
3143 \newfontscript{Pahawh-Hmong}{hmng}  
3144 \newfontscript{Palmyrene}{palm}  
3145 \newfontscript{Pau-Cin-Hau}{pauc}  
3146 \newfontscript{Phags-pa}{phag}  
3147 \newfontscript{Phoenician}{phnx}  
3148 \newfontscript{Psalter-Pahlavi}{phlp}  
3149 \newfontscript{Rejang}{rjng}  
3150 \newfontscript{Runic}{runr}  
3151 \newfontscript{Samaritan}{samr}  
3152 \newfontscript{Saurashtra}{saur}  
3153 \newfontscript{Sharada}{shrd}  
3154 \newfontscript{Shavian}{shaw}  
3155 \newfontscript{Siddham}{sidd}  
3156 \newfontscript{Sign-Writing}{sgnw}  
3157 \newfontscript{Sinhala}{sinh}  
3158 \newfontscript{Sora-Sompeng}{sora}  
3159 \newfontscript{Sumero-Akkadian-Cuneiform}{xsux}  
3160 \newfontscript{Sundanese}{sund}  
3161 \newfontscript{Syloti-Nagri}{sylo}  
3162 \newfontscript{Syriac}{syrç}  
3163 \newfontscript{Tagalog}{tglg}  
3164 \newfontscript{Tagbanwa}{tagb}  
3165 \newfontscript{Tai-Le}{tale}  
3166 \newfontscript{Tai-Lu}{talu}  
3167 \newfontscript{Tai-Tham}{lana}  
3168 \newfontscript{Tai-Viet}{tavt}  
3169 \newfontscript{Takri}{takr}  
3170 \newfontscript{Tamil}{tml2,taml}  
3171 \newfontscript{Tangut}{tang}  
3172 \newfontscript{Telugu}{tel2,telu}  
3173 \newfontscript{Thaana}{thaa}  
3174 \newfontscript{Thai}{thai}  
3175 \newfontscript{Tibetan}{tibt}  
3176 \newfontscript{Tifinagh}{tfng}  
3177 \newfontscript{Tirhuta}{tirh}  
3178 \newfontscript{Ugaritic-Cuneiform}{ugar}  
3179 \newfontscript{Vai}{vai~}  
3180 \newfontscript{Warang-Citi}{wara}  
3181 \newfontscript{Yi}{yi~~}

For convenience or backwards compatibility:

3182 \newfontscript{CJK}{hani}  
3183 \newfontscript{Kana}{kana}  
3184 \newfontscript{Maths}{math}

3185 \newfontscript{N'ko}{nko~}  
3186 \newfontscript{Oriya}{ory2,orya}

### 38.7 Font language definitions

3187 \newfontlanguage{Abaza}{ABA}  
3188 \newfontlanguage{Abkhazian}{ABK}  
3189 \newfontlanguage{Adyghe}{ADY}  
3190 \newfontlanguage{Afrikaans}{AFK}  
3191 \newfontlanguage{Afar}{AFR}  
3192 \newfontlanguage{Agaw}{AGW}  
3193 \newfontlanguage{Altai}{ALT}  
3194 \newfontlanguage{Amharic}{AMH}  
3195 \newfontlanguage{Arabic}{ARA}  
3196 \newfontlanguage{Aari}{ARI}  
3197 \newfontlanguage{Arakanese}{ARK}  
3198 \newfontlanguage{Assamese}{ASM}  
3199 \newfontlanguage{Athapaskan}{ATH}  
3200 \newfontlanguage{Avar}{AVR}  
3201 \newfontlanguage{Awadhi}{AWA}  
3202 \newfontlanguage{Aymara}{AYM}  
3203 \newfontlanguage{Azeri}{AZE}  
3204 \newfontlanguage{Badaga}{BAD}  
3205 \newfontlanguage{Baghelkhandi}{BAG}  
3206 \newfontlanguage{Balkar}{BAL}  
3207 \newfontlanguage{Baule}{BAU}  
3208 \newfontlanguage{Berber}{BBR}  
3209 \newfontlanguage{Bench}{BCH}  
3210 \newfontlanguage{Bible-Cree}{BCR}  
3211 \newfontlanguage{Belarussian}{BEL}  
3212 \newfontlanguage{Bemba}{BEM}  
3213 \newfontlanguage{Bengali}{BEN}  
3214 \newfontlanguage{Bulgarian}{BGR}  
3215 \newfontlanguage{Bhili}{BHI}  
3216 \newfontlanguage{Bhojपुरi}{BHO}  
3217 \newfontlanguage{Bikol}{BIK}  
3218 \newfontlanguage{Bilen}{BIL}  
3219 \newfontlanguage{Blackfoot}{BKF}  
3220 \newfontlanguage{Balochi}{BLI}  
3221 \newfontlanguage{Balante}{BLN}  
3222 \newfontlanguage{Balti}{BLT}  
3223 \newfontlanguage{Bambara}{BMB}  
3224 \newfontlanguage{Bamileke}{BML}  
3225 \newfontlanguage{Breton}{BRE}  
3226 \newfontlanguage{Brahui}{BRH}  
3227 \newfontlanguage{Braj-Bhasha}{BRI}  
3228 \newfontlanguage{Burmese}{BRM}  
3229 \newfontlanguage{Bashkir}{BSH}  
3230 \newfontlanguage{Beti}{BTI}  
3231 \newfontlanguage{Catalan}{CAT}  
3232 \newfontlanguage{Cebuano}{CEB}  
3233 \newfontlanguage{Chechen}{CHE}

3234 \newfontlanguage{Chaha-Gurage}{CHG}  
3235 \newfontlanguage{Chattisgarhi}{CHH}  
3236 \newfontlanguage{Chichewa}{CHI}  
3237 \newfontlanguage{Chukchi}{CHK}  
3238 \newfontlanguage{Chipewyan}{CHP}  
3239 \newfontlanguage{Cherokee}{CHR}  
3240 \newfontlanguage{Chuvash}{CHU}  
3241 \newfontlanguage{Comorian}{CMR}  
3242 \newfontlanguage{Coptic}{COP}  
3243 \newfontlanguage{Cree}{CRE}  
3244 \newfontlanguage{Carrier}{CRR}  
3245 \newfontlanguage{Crimean-Tatar}{CRT}  
3246 \newfontlanguage{Church-Slavonic}{CSL}  
3247 \newfontlanguage{Czech}{CSY}  
3248 \newfontlanguage{Danish}{DAN}  
3249 \newfontlanguage{Dargwa}{DAR}  
3250 \newfontlanguage{Woods-Cree}{DCR}  
3251 \newfontlanguage{German}{DEU}  
3252 \newfontlanguage{Dogri}{DGR}  
3253 \newfontlanguage{Divehi}{DIV}  
3254 \newfontlanguage{Djerma}{DJR}  
3255 \newfontlanguage{Dangme}{DNG}  
3256 \newfontlanguage{Dinka}{DNK}  
3257 \newfontlanguage{Dungan}{DUN}  
3258 \newfontlanguage{Dzongkha}{DZN}  
3259 \newfontlanguage{Ebirá}{EBI}  
3260 \newfontlanguage{Eastern-Cree}{ECR}  
3261 \newfontlanguage{Edo}{EDO}  
3262 \newfontlanguage{Efik}{EFI}  
3263 \newfontlanguage{Greek}{ELL}  
3264 \newfontlanguage{English}{ENG}  
3265 \newfontlanguage{Erzya}{ERZ}  
3266 \newfontlanguage{Spanish}{ESP}  
3267 \newfontlanguage{Estonian}{ETI}  
3268 \newfontlanguage{Basque}{EUQ}  
3269 \newfontlanguage{Evenki}{EVK}  
3270 \newfontlanguage{Even}{EVN}  
3271 \newfontlanguage{Ewe}{EWE}  
3272 \newfontlanguage{French-Antillean}{FAN}  
3273 \newfontlanguage{Farsi}{FAR}  
3274 \newfontlanguage{Parsi}{FAR}  
3275 \newfontlanguage{Persian}{FAR}  
3276 \newfontlanguage{Finnish}{FIN}  
3277 \newfontlanguage{Fijian}{FJI}  
3278 \newfontlanguage{Flemish}{FLE}  
3279 \newfontlanguage{Forest-Nenets}{FNE}  
3280 \newfontlanguage{Fon}{FON}  
3281 \newfontlanguage{Faroese}{FOS}  
3282 \newfontlanguage{French}{FRA}  
3283 \newfontlanguage{Frisian}{FRI}  
3284 \newfontlanguage{Friulian}{FRL}

3285 \newfontlanguage{Futa}{FTA}  
3286 \newfontlanguage{Fulani}{FUL}  
3287 \newfontlanguage{Ga}{GAD}  
3288 \newfontlanguage{Gaelic}{GAE}  
3289 \newfontlanguage{Gagauz}{GAG}  
3290 \newfontlanguage{Galician}{GAL}  
3291 \newfontlanguage{Garshuni}{GAR}  
3292 \newfontlanguage{Garhwali}{GAW}  
3293 \newfontlanguage{Ge'ez}{GEZ}  
3294 \newfontlanguage{Gilyak}{GIL}  
3295 \newfontlanguage{Gumuz}{GMZ}  
3296 \newfontlanguage{Gondi}{GON}  
3297 \newfontlanguage{Greenlandic}{GRN}  
3298 \newfontlanguage{Garo}{GRO}  
3299 \newfontlanguage{Guarani}{GUA}  
3300 \newfontlanguage{Gujarati}{GUJ}  
3301 \newfontlanguage{Haitian}{HAI}  
3302 \newfontlanguage{Halam}{HAL}  
3303 \newfontlanguage{Harauti}{HAR}  
3304 \newfontlanguage{Hausa}{HAU}  
3305 \newfontlanguage{Hawaiin}{HAW}  
3306 \newfontlanguage{Hammer-Banna}{HBN}  
3307 \newfontlanguage{Hiligaynon}{HIL}  
3308 \newfontlanguage{Hindi}{HIN}  
3309 \newfontlanguage{High-Mari}{HMA}  
3310 \newfontlanguage{Hindko}{HND}  
3311 \newfontlanguage{Ho}{HO}  
3312 \newfontlanguage{Harari}{HRI}  
3313 \newfontlanguage{Croatian}{HRV}  
3314 \newfontlanguage{Hungarian}{HUN}  
3315 \newfontlanguage{Armenian}{HYE}  
3316 \newfontlanguage{Igbo}{IBO}  
3317 \newfontlanguage{Ijo}{IJO}  
3318 \newfontlanguage{Ilokano}{ILO}  
3319 \newfontlanguage{Indonesian}{IND}  
3320 \newfontlanguage{Ingush}{ING}  
3321 \newfontlanguage{Inuktitut}{INU}  
3322 \newfontlanguage{Irish}{IRI}  
3323 \newfontlanguage{Irish-Traditional}{IRT}  
3324 \newfontlanguage{Icelandic}{ISL}  
3325 \newfontlanguage{Inari-Sami}{ISM}  
3326 \newfontlanguage{Italian}{ITA}  
3327 \newfontlanguage{Hebrew}{IWR}  
3328 \newfontlanguage{Javanese}{JAV}  
3329 \newfontlanguage{Yiddish}{JII}  
3330 \newfontlanguage{Japanese}{JAN}  
3331 \newfontlanguage{Judezmo}{JUD}  
3332 \newfontlanguage{Jula}{JUL}  
3333 \newfontlanguage{Kabardian}{KAB}  
3334 \newfontlanguage{Kachchi}{KAC}  
3335 \newfontlanguage{Kalenjin}{KAL}



3336 \newfontlanguage{Kannada}{KAN}  
 3337 \newfontlanguage{Karachay}{KAR}  
 3338 \newfontlanguage{Georgian}{KAT}  
 3339 \newfontlanguage{Kazakh}{KAZ}  
 3340 \newfontlanguage{Kebena}{KEB}  
 3341 \newfontlanguage{Khutsuri~Georgian}{KGE}  
 3342 \newfontlanguage{Khakass}{KHA}  
 3343 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Kazim}{KHK}  
 3344 \newfontlanguage{Khmer}{KHM}  
 3345 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Shurishkar}{KHS}  
 3346 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Vakhi}{KHV}  
 3347 \newfontlanguage{Khowar}{KHW}  
 3348 \newfontlanguage{Kikuyu}{KIK}  
 3349 \newfontlanguage{Kirghiz}{KIR}  
 3350 \newfontlanguage{Kisii}{KIS}  
 3351 \newfontlanguage{Kokni}{KKN}  
 3352 \newfontlanguage{Kalmyk}{KLM}  
 3353 \newfontlanguage{Kamba}{KMB}  
 3354 \newfontlanguage{Kumaoni}{KMN}  
 3355 \newfontlanguage{Komo}{KMO}  
 3356 \newfontlanguage{Komsu}{KMS}  
 3357 \newfontlanguage{Kanuri}{KNR}  
 3358 \newfontlanguage{Kodagu}{KOD}  
 3359 \newfontlanguage{Korean-Old-Hangul}{KOH}  
 3360 \newfontlanguage{Konkani}{KOK}  
 3361 \newfontlanguage{Kikongo}{KON}  
 3362 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Permyak}{KOP}  
 3363 \newfontlanguage{Korean}{KOR}  
 3364 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Zyrian}{KOZ}  
 3365 \newfontlanguage{Kpelle}{KPL}  
 3366 \newfontlanguage{Krio}{KRI}  
 3367 \newfontlanguage{Karakalpak}{KRK}  
 3368 \newfontlanguage{Karelian}{KRL}  
 3369 \newfontlanguage{Karaim}{KRM}  
 3370 \newfontlanguage{Karen}{KRN}  
 3371 \newfontlanguage{Koorete}{KRT}  
 3372 \newfontlanguage{Kashmiri}{KSH}  
 3373 \newfontlanguage{Khasi}{KSI}  
 3374 \newfontlanguage{Kildin-Sami}{KSM}  
 3375 \newfontlanguage{Kui}{KUI}  
 3376 \newfontlanguage{Kulvi}{KUL}  
 3377 \newfontlanguage{Kumyk}{KUM}  
 3378 \newfontlanguage{Kurdish}{KUR}  
 3379 \newfontlanguage{Kurukh}{KUU}  
 3380 \newfontlanguage{Kuy}{KUY}  
 3381 \newfontlanguage{Koryak}{KYK}  
 3382 \newfontlanguage{Ladin}{LAD}  
 3383 \newfontlanguage{Lahuli}{LAH}  
 3384 \newfontlanguage{Lak}{LAK}  
 3385 \newfontlanguage{Lambani}{LAM}  
 3386 \newfontlanguage{Lao}{LAO}

3387 \newfontlanguage{Latin}{LAT}  
3388 \newfontlanguage{Laz}{LAZ}  
3389 \newfontlanguage{L-Cree}{LCR}  
3390 \newfontlanguage{Ladakhi}{LDK}  
3391 \newfontlanguage{Lezgi}{LEZ}  
3392 \newfontlanguage{Lingala}{LIN}  
3393 \newfontlanguage{Low-Mari}{LMA}  
3394 \newfontlanguage{Limbu}{LMB}  
3395 \newfontlanguage{Lomwe}{LMW}  
3396 \newfontlanguage{Lower-Sorbian}{LSB}  
3397 \newfontlanguage{Lule-Sami}{LSM}  
3398 \newfontlanguage{Lithuanian}{LTH}  
3399 \newfontlanguage{Luba}{LUB}  
3400 \newfontlanguage{Luganda}{LUG}  
3401 \newfontlanguage{Luhya}{LUH}  
3402 \newfontlanguage{Luo}{LUO}  
3403 \newfontlanguage{Latvian}{LVI}  
3404 \newfontlanguage{Majang}{MAJ}  
3405 \newfontlanguage{Makua}{MAK}  
3406 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam-Traditional}{MAL}  
3407 \newfontlanguage{Mansi}{MAN}  
3408 \newfontlanguage{Marathi}{MAR}  
3409 \newfontlanguage{Marwari}{MAW}  
3410 \newfontlanguage{Mbundu}{MBN}  
3411 \newfontlanguage{Manchu}{MCH}  
3412 \newfontlanguage{Moose-Cree}{MCR}  
3413 \newfontlanguage{Mende}{MDE}  
3414 \newfontlanguage{Me'en}{MEN}  
3415 \newfontlanguage{Mizo}{MIZ}  
3416 \newfontlanguage{Macedonian}{MKD}  
3417 \newfontlanguage{Male}{MLE}  
3418 \newfontlanguage{Malagasy}{MLG}  
3419 \newfontlanguage{Malinke}{MLN}  
3420 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam-Reformed}{MLR}  
3421 \newfontlanguage{Malay}{MLY}  
3422 \newfontlanguage{Mandinka}{MND}  
3423 \newfontlanguage{Mongolian}{MNG}  
3424 \newfontlanguage{Manipuri}{MNI}  
3425 \newfontlanguage{Maninka}{MNK}  
3426 \newfontlanguage{Manx-Gaelic}{MNX}  
3427 \newfontlanguage{Moksha}{MOK}  
3428 \newfontlanguage{Moldavian}{MOL}  
3429 \newfontlanguage{Mon}{MON}  
3430 \newfontlanguage{Moroccan}{MOR}  
3431 \newfontlanguage{Maori}{MRI}  
3432 \newfontlanguage{Maithili}{MTH}  
3433 \newfontlanguage{Maltese}{MTS}  
3434 \newfontlanguage{Mundari}{MUN}  
3435 \newfontlanguage{Naga-Assamese}{NAG}  
3436 \newfontlanguage{Nanai}{NAN}  
3437 \newfontlanguage{Naskapi}{NAS}

3438 \newfontlanguage{N-Cree}{NCR}  
3439 \newfontlanguage{Ndebele}{NDB}  
3440 \newfontlanguage{Ndonga}{NDG}  
3441 \newfontlanguage{Nepali}{NEP}  
3442 \newfontlanguage{Newari}{NEW}  
3443 \newfontlanguage{Nagari}{NGR}  
3444 \newfontlanguage{Norway~House~Cree}{NHC}  
3445 \newfontlanguage{Nisi}{NIS}  
3446 \newfontlanguage{Niuean}{NIU}  
3447 \newfontlanguage{Nkole}{NKL}  
3448 \newfontlanguage{N'ko}{NKO}  
3449 \newfontlanguage{Dutch}{NLD}  
3450 \newfontlanguage{Nogai}{NOG}  
3451 \newfontlanguage{Norwegian}{NOR}  
3452 \newfontlanguage{Northern~Sami}{NSM}  
3453 \newfontlanguage{Northern~Tai}{NTA}  
3454 \newfontlanguage{Esperanto}{NTO}  
3455 \newfontlanguage{Nynorsk}{NYN}  
3456 \newfontlanguage{Oji-Cree}{OCR}  
3457 \newfontlanguage{Ojibway}{OBJ}  
3458 \newfontlanguage{Oriya}{ORI}  
3459 \newfontlanguage{Oromo}{ORO}  
3460 \newfontlanguage{Ossetian}{OSS}  
3461 \newfontlanguage{Palestinian~Aramaic}{PAA}  
3462 \newfontlanguage{Pali}{PAL}  
3463 \newfontlanguage{Punjabi}{PAN}  
3464 \newfontlanguage{Palpa}{PAP}  
3465 \newfontlanguage{Pashto}{PAS}  
3466 \newfontlanguage{Polytonic~Greek}{PGR}  
3467 \newfontlanguage{Pilipino}{PIL}  
3468 \newfontlanguage{Palaung}{PLG}  
3469 \newfontlanguage{Polish}{PLK}  
3470 \newfontlanguage{Provençal}{PRO}  
3471 \newfontlanguage{Portuguese}{PTG}  
3472 \newfontlanguage{Chin}{QIN}  
3473 \newfontlanguage{Rajasthani}{RAJ}  
3474 \newfontlanguage{R-Cree}{RCR}  
3475 \newfontlanguage{Russian~Buriat}{RBU}  
3476 \newfontlanguage{Riang}{RIA}  
3477 \newfontlanguage{Rhaeto-Romanic}{RMS}  
3478 \newfontlanguage{Romanian}{ROM}  
3479 \newfontlanguage{Romany}{ROY}  
3480 \newfontlanguage{Rusyn}{RSY}  
3481 \newfontlanguage{Ruanda}{RUA}  
3482 \newfontlanguage{Russian}{RUS}  
3483 \newfontlanguage{Sadri}{SAD}  
3484 \newfontlanguage{Sanskrit}{SAN}  
3485 \newfontlanguage{Santali}{SAT}  
3486 \newfontlanguage{Sayisi}{SAY}  
3487 \newfontlanguage{Sekota}{SEK}  
3488 \newfontlanguage{Selkup}{SEL}

3489 \newfontlanguage{Sango}{SGO}  
3490 \newfontlanguage{Shan}{SHN}  
3491 \newfontlanguage{Sibe}{SIB}  
3492 \newfontlanguage{Sidamo}{SID}  
3493 \newfontlanguage{Silte-Gurage}{SIG}  
3494 \newfontlanguage{Skolt-Sami}{SKS}  
3495 \newfontlanguage{Slovak}{SKY}  
3496 \newfontlanguage{Slavey}{SLA}  
3497 \newfontlanguage{Slovenian}{SLV}  
3498 \newfontlanguage{Somali}{SML}  
3499 \newfontlanguage{Samoan}{SMO}  
3500 \newfontlanguage{Sena}{SNA}  
3501 \newfontlanguage{Sindhi}{SND}  
3502 \newfontlanguage{Sinhalese}{SNH}  
3503 \newfontlanguage{Soninke}{SNK}  
3504 \newfontlanguage{Sodo-Gurage}{SOG}  
3505 \newfontlanguage{Sotho}{SOT}  
3506 \newfontlanguage{Albanian}{SQI}  
3507 \newfontlanguage{Serbian}{SRB}  
3508 \newfontlanguage{Saraiki}{SRK}  
3509 \newfontlanguage{Serer}{SRR}  
3510 \newfontlanguage{South-Slavey}{SSL}  
3511 \newfontlanguage{Southern-Sami}{SSM}  
3512 \newfontlanguage{Suri}{SUR}  
3513 \newfontlanguage{Svan}{SVA}  
3514 \newfontlanguage{Swedish}{SVE}  
3515 \newfontlanguage{Swadaya-Aramaic}{SWA}  
3516 \newfontlanguage{Swahili}{SWK}  
3517 \newfontlanguage{Swazi}{SWZ}  
3518 \newfontlanguage{Sutu}{SXT}  
3519 \newfontlanguage{Syriac}{SYR}  
3520 \newfontlanguage{Tabasaran}{TAB}  
3521 \newfontlanguage{Tajiki}{TAJ}  
3522 \newfontlanguage{Tamil}{TAM}  
3523 \newfontlanguage{Tatar}{TAT}  
3524 \newfontlanguage{TH-Cree}{TCR}  
3525 \newfontlanguage{Telugu}{TEL}  
3526 \newfontlanguage{Tongan}{TGN}  
3527 \newfontlanguage{Tigre}{TGR}  
3528 \newfontlanguage{Tigrinya}{TGY}  
3529 \newfontlanguage{Thai}{THA}  
3530 \newfontlanguage{Tahitian}{THT}  
3531 \newfontlanguage{Tibetan}{TIB}  
3532 \newfontlanguage{Turkmen}{TKM}  
3533 \newfontlanguage{Temne}{TMN}  
3534 \newfontlanguage{Tswana}{TNA}  
3535 \newfontlanguage{Tundra-Nenets}{TNE}  
3536 \newfontlanguage{Tonga}{TNG}  
3537 \newfontlanguage{Todo}{TOD}  
3538 \newfontlanguage{Tsonga}{TSG}  
3539 \newfontlanguage{Turoyo-Aramaic}{TUA}

```

3540 \newfontlanguage{Tulu}{TUL}
3541 \newfontlanguage{Tuvin}{TUV}
3542 \newfontlanguage{Twi}{TWI}
3543 \newfontlanguage{Udmurt}{UDM}
3544 \newfontlanguage{Ukrainian}{UKR}
3545 \newfontlanguage{Urdu}{URD}
3546 \newfontlanguage{Upper~Sorbian}{USB}
3547 \newfontlanguage{Uyghur}{UYG}
3548 \newfontlanguage{Uzbek}{UZB}
3549 \newfontlanguage{Venda}{VEN}
3550 \newfontlanguage{Vietnamese}{VIT}
3551 \newfontlanguage{Wa}{WA}
3552 \newfontlanguage{Wagdi}{WAG}
3553 \newfontlanguage{West~Cree}{WCR}
3554 \newfontlanguage{Welsh}{WEL}
3555 \newfontlanguage{Wolof}{WLF}
3556 \newfontlanguage{Tai~Lue}{XBD}
3557 \newfontlanguage{Xhosa}{XHS}
3558 \newfontlanguage{Yakut}{YAK}
3559 \newfontlanguage{Yoruba}{YBA}
3560 \newfontlanguage{Y~Cree}{YCR}
3561 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Classic}{YIC}
3562 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Modern}{YIM}
3563 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Hong~Kong}{ZHH}
3564 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Phonetic}{ZHP}
3565 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Simplified}{ZHS}
3566 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Traditional}{ZHT}
3567 \newfontlanguage{Zande}{ZND}
3568 \newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}

```

## 38.8 AAT feature definitions

These are only defined for X<sub>3</sub>T<sub>EX</sub>.

### 38.8.1 Ligatures

```

3569 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Ligatures}
3570 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Required} {1} {0}
3571 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoRequired} {1} {1}
3572 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Common} {1} {2}
3573 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoCommon} {1} {3}
3574 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Rare} {1} {4}
3575 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoRare} {1} {5}
3576 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Discretionary} {1} {4}
3577 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoDiscretionary} {1} {5}
3578 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Logos} {1} {6}
3579 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoLogos} {1} {7}
3580 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Rebus} {1} {8}
3581 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoRebus} {1} {9}
3582 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Diphthong} {1} {10}
3583 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {NoDiphthong} {1} {11}
3584 \@@_define_aat_feature:nmmn {Ligatures} {Squared} {1} {12}

```

```

3585 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoSquared} {1} {13}
3586 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {AbbrevSquared} {1} {14}
3587 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoAbbrevSquared} {1} {15}
3588 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {Icelandic} {1} {32}
3589 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Ligatures} {NoIcelandic} {1} {33}

```

Emulate CM extra ligatures.

```

3590 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
3591 {
3592   Ligatures / TeX .code:n =
3593   {
3594     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_mapping_tl { tex-text }
3595   }
3596 }

```

### 38.8.2 Letters

```

3597 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Letters}
3598 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {Normal} {3} {0}
3599 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {Uppercase} {3} {1}
3600 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {Lowercase} {3} {2}
3601 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {SmallCaps} {3} {3}
3602 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Letters} {InitialCaps} {3} {4}

```

### 38.8.3 Numbers

These were originally separated into `NumberCase` and `NumberSpacing` following AAT, but it makes more sense to combine them.

Both naming conventions are offered to select the number case.

```

3603 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Numbers}
3604 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Monospaced} {6} {0}
3605 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Proportional} {6} {1}
3606 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Lowercase} {21} {0}
3607 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {OldStyle} {21} {0}
3608 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Uppercase} {21} {1}
3609 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {Lining} {21} {1}
3610 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {SlashedZero} {14} {5}
3611 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Numbers} {NoSlashedZero} {14} {4}

```

### 38.8.4 Contextuals

```

3612 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Contextuals}
3613 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {WordInitial} {8} {0}
3614 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoWordInitial} {8} {1}
3615 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {WordFinal} {8} {2}
3616 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoWordFinal} {8} {3}
3617 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {LineInitial} {8} {4}
3618 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoLineInitial} {8} {5}
3619 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {LineFinal} {8} {6}
3620 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoLineFinal} {8} {7}
3621 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {Inner} {8} {8}
3622 \@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn {Contextuals} {NoInner} {8} {9}

```

### 38.8.5 Diacritics

```

3623 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Diacritics}
3624 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {Diacritics} {Show} {9} {0}
3625 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {Diacritics} {Hide} {9} {1}
3626 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {Diacritics} {Decompose} {9} {2}

```

### 38.8.6 Vertical position

```

3627 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {VerticalPosition}
3628 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {VerticalPosition} {Normal} {10} {0}
3629 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {VerticalPosition} {Superior} {10} {1}
3630 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {VerticalPosition} {Inferior} {10} {2}
3631 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {VerticalPosition} {Ordinal} {10} {3}

```

### 38.8.7 Fractions

```

3632 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Fractions}
3633 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {Fractions} {On} {11} {1}
3634 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {Fractions} {Off} {11} {0}
3635 \@@_define_aat_feature:n:nmn {Fractions} {Diagonal} {11} {2}

```

### 38.8.8 Alternate

```

3636 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n { Alternate }
3637 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
3638 {
3639   Alternate .default:n = {0} ,
3640   Alternate / unknown .code:n =
3641     {
3642       \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
3643         {
3644           \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn {17}{##1}
3645         }
3646     }
3647 }

```

### 38.8.9 Variant / StylisticSet

```

3648 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Variant}
3649 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
3650 {
3651   Variant .default:n = {0} ,
3652   Variant / unknown .code:n =
3653     {
3654       \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
3655         { \@@_make_AAT_feature:nn {18}{##1} }
3656     }
3657 }
3658 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}

3659 \@@_define_aat_feature_group:n {Vertical}
3660 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-aat}
3661 {
3662   Vertical .choice: ,
3663   Vertical / RotatedGlyphs .code:n =
3664     {
3665       \__fontspec_update_featstr:n {vertical}

```

3666 }  
3667 }  
3668

### 38.8.10 Style

3669 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature\_group:n {Style}  
3670 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Style} {Italic} {32} {2}  
3671 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Style} {Ruby} {28} {2}  
3672 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Style} {Display} {19} {1}  
3673 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Style} {Engraved} {19} {2}  
3674 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Style} {TitlingCaps} {19} {4}  
3675 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Style} {TallCaps} {19} {5}

### 38.8.11 CJK shape

3676 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature\_group:n {CJKShape}  
3677 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {Traditional} {20} {0}  
3678 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {Simplified} {20} {1}  
3679 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1978} {20} {2}  
3680 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1983} {20} {3}  
3681 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {JIS1990} {20} {4}  
3682 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {Expert} {20} {10}  
3683 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CJKShape} {NLC} {20} {13}

### 38.8.12 Character width

3684 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature\_group:n {CharacterWidth}  
3685 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Proportional} {22} {0}  
3686 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Full} {22} {1}  
3687 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Half} {22} {2}  
3688 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Third} {22} {3}  
3689 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Quarter} {22} {4}  
3690 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateProportional} {22} {5}  
3691 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {AlternateHalf} {22} {6}  
3692 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {CharacterWidth} {Default} {22} {7}

### 38.8.13 Annotation

3693 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature\_group:n {Annotation}  
3694 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Off} {24} {0}  
3695 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Box} {24} {1}  
3696 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {RoundedBox} {24} {2}  
3697 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Circle} {24} {3}  
3698 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {BlackCircle} {24} {4}  
3699 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Parenthesis} {24} {5}  
3700 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Period} {24} {6}  
3701 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {RomanNumerals} {24} {7}  
3702 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {Diamond} {24} {8}  
3703 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {BlackSquare} {24} {9}  
3704 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {BlackRoundSquare} {24} {10}  
3705 \@@\_define\_aat\_feature:nnnn {Annotation} {DoubleCircle} {24} {11}



## 39 Extended font encodings

To be removed after the 2017 release of LaTeX2e:

```
3706 \providecommand\UnicodeFontFile[2]{["#1]:#2"}
3707 \providecommand\UnicodeFontName[2]{"#1:#2"}
3708 (xetex)\providecommand\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures{mapping=tex-text;}
3709 (luatex)\providecommand\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures{+tlig;}
3710 \providecommand\add@unicode@accent[2]{#2\char#1\relax}
3711 \providecommand\DeclareUnicodeAccent[3]{%
3712   \DeclareTextCommand{#1}{#2}{\add@unicode@accent{#3}}%
3713 }
```

### \EncodingCommand

```
3714 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingCommand {m0}{m}
3715 {
3716   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3717   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingCommand }
3718   \DeclareTextCommand{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}{#3}
3719 }
```

### \EncodingAccent

```
3720 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingAccent {mm}
3721 {
3722   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3723   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingAccent }
3724   \DeclareTextCommand{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{\add@unicode@accent{#2}}
3725 }
```

### \EncodingSymbol

```
3726 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingSymbol {mm}
3727 {
3728   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3729   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingSymbol }
3730   \DeclareTextSymbol{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}
3731 }
```

### \EncodingComposite

```
3732 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingComposite {mmm}
3733 {
3734   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3735   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingComposite }
3736   \DeclareTextComposite{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}{#3}
3737 }
```

### \EncodingCompositeCommand

```
3738 \DeclareDocumentCommand \EncodingCompositeCommand {mmm}
3739 {
3740   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3741   { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \EncodingCompositeCommand }
3742   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{#1}{\UnicodeEncodingName}{#2}{#3}
3743 }
```

## `\DeclareUnicodeEncoding`

```
3744 \DeclareDocumentCommand \DeclareUnicodeEncoding {mm}
3745 {
3746   \DeclareFontEncoding{#1}{}{}
3747   \DeclareErrorFont{#1}{lmr}{m}{n}{10}
3748   \DeclareFontSubstitution{#1}{lmr}{m}{n}
3749   \DeclareFontFamily{#1}{lmr}{}
3750
3751   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lmr}{m}{n}
3752     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-regular}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
3753   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lmr}{m}{it}
3754     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-italic}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
3755   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lmr}{m}{sc}
3756     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmromancaps10-regular}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
3757   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lmr}{bx}{n}
3758     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-bold}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
3759   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{lmr}{bx}{it}
3760     {<->\UnicodeFontFile{lmroman10-bolditalic}{\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures}}{}
3761
3762   \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_prev_unicode_name_tl \UnicodeEncodingName
3763   \tl_set:Nn \UnicodeEncodingName {#1}
3764   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3765   #2
3766   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3767   \tl_set_eq:NN \UnicodeEncodingName \l_@@_prev_unicode_name_tl
3768 }
```

## `\UndeclareSymbol`

```
3769 \DeclareDocumentCommand \UndeclareSymbol {m}
3770 {
3771   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3772     { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \UndeclareSymbol }
3773   \UndeclareTextCommand {#1} {\UnicodeEncodingName}
3774 }
3775
```

## `\UndeclareComposite`

```
3776 \DeclareDocumentCommand \UndeclareComposite {mm}
3777 {
3778   \bool_if:NF \l_@@_defining_encoding_bool
3779     { \@@_error:nn {only-inside-encdef} \UndeclareComposite }
3780   \cs_undefine:c
3781     { \c_backslash_str \UnicodeEncodingName \token_to_str:N #1 - \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
3782 }
```

## 40 Selecting maths fonts

Here, the fonts used in math mode are redefined to correspond to the default roman, sans serif and typewriter fonts. Unfortunately, you can only define maths fonts in the preamble, otherwise I'd run this code whenever `\setmainfont` and friends was run.

`\fontspec_setup_maths:` Everything here is performed `\AtBeginDocument` in order to overwrite euler's attempt. This means fontspec must be loaded *after* euler. We set up a conditional to return an error if this rule is violated.

Since every maths setup is slightly different, we also take different paths for defining various math glyphs depending which maths font package has been loaded.

```

3783 \ifpackageloaded{euler}
3784 {
3785   \bool_set_true:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
3786 }
3787 {
3788   \bool_set_false:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
3789 }
3790 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_setup_maths:
3791 {
3792   \ifpackageloaded{euler}
3793   {
3794     \bool_if:NTF \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
3795     { \bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool }
3796     { \@@_error:n {euler-too-late} }
3797   }
3798   {}
3799   \ifpackageloaded{lucbmath}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{-}
3800   \ifpackageloaded{lucidabr}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{-}
3801   \ifpackageloaded{lucimatx}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{-}

```

Knuth's CM fonts are all squashed together, combining letters, accents, text symbols and maths symbols all in the one font, `cmr`, plus other things in other fonts. Because we are changing the roman font in the document, we need to redefine all of the maths glyphs in  $\LaTeX$ 's `operators` maths font to still go back to the legacy `cmr` font for all these random glyphs, unless a separate maths font package has been loaded instead.

In every case, the maths accents are always taken from the `operators` font, which is generally the main text font. (Actually, there is a `\hat` accent in `EulerFraktur`, but it's *ugly*. So I ignore it. Sorry if this causes inconvenience.)

```

3802 \DeclareSymbolFont{legacymaths}{OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
3803 \SetSymbolFont{legacymaths}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
3804 \DeclareMathAccent{\acute} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{19}
3805 \DeclareMathAccent{\grave} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{18}
3806 \DeclareMathAccent{\ddot} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{127}
3807 \DeclareMathAccent{\tilde} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{126}
3808 \DeclareMathAccent{\bar} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{22}
3809 \DeclareMathAccent{\breve} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{21}
3810 \DeclareMathAccent{\check} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{20}
3811 \DeclareMathAccent{\hat} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{94} % too bad, euler
3812 \DeclareMathAccent{\dot} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{95}
3813 \DeclareMathAccent{\mathring} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{23}

```

`\colon:` what's going on? Okay, so `:` and `\colon` in maths mode are defined in a few places, so I need to work out what does what. Respectively, we have:

```

% % fontmath.ltx:
% \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{"3A}

```

```

% \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{"3A}
%
% % amsmath.sty:
% \renewcommand{\colon}{\nobreak\mskip2mu\mathpunct{} \nonscript
% \mkern-\thinmuskip}{\mskip6mu\plus1mu\relax}
%
% % euler.sty:
% \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{EulerFraktur}{"3A}
%
% % lucbmath.sty:
% \DeclareMathSymbol{\@tempb}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
% \ifx\colon\@tempb
% \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
% \fi
% \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{58}

```

(3A\_16 = 58\_10) So I think, based on this summary, that it is fair to tell fontspec to 'replace' the operators font with legacymaths for this symbol, except when amsmath is loaded since we want to keep its definition.

```

3814 \group_begin:
3815 \mathchardef\@tempa="603A \relax
3816 \ifx\colon\@tempa
3817 \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{58}
3818 \fi
3819 \group_end:

```

The following symbols are only defined specifically in euler, so skip them if that package is loaded.

```

3820 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_math_euler_bool
3821 {
3822 \DeclareMathSymbol{!}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{33}
3823 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{58}
3824 \DeclareMathSymbol{;}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{59}
3825 \DeclareMathSymbol{?}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{63}

```

And these ones are defined both in euler and lucbmath, so we only need to run this code if no extra maths package has been loaded.

```

3826 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
3827 {
3828 \DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`0}
3829 \DeclareMathSymbol{1}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`1}
3830 \DeclareMathSymbol{2}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`2}
3831 \DeclareMathSymbol{3}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`3}
3832 \DeclareMathSymbol{4}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`4}
3833 \DeclareMathSymbol{5}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`5}
3834 \DeclareMathSymbol{6}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`6}
3835 \DeclareMathSymbol{7}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`7}
3836 \DeclareMathSymbol{8}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`8}
3837 \DeclareMathSymbol{9}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{`9}
3838 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Gamma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{0}
3839 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Delta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{1}

```

```

3840 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Theta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{2}
3841 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Lambda}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{3}
3842 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Xi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{4}
3843 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Pi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{5}
3844 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Sigma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{6}
3845 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Upsilon}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{7}
3846 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Phi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{8}
3847 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Psi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{9}
3848 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Omega}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{10}
3849 \DeclareMathSymbol{+}{\mathbin}{legacymaths}{43}
3850 \DeclareMathSymbol{=}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{61}
3851 \DeclareMathDelimiter{()}{\mathopen}{legacymaths}{40}{largesymbols}{0}
3852 \DeclareMathDelimiter{)}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{41}{largesymbols}{1}
3853 \DeclareMathDelimiter{[]}{\mathopen}{legacymaths}{91}{largesymbols}{2}
3854 \DeclareMathDelimiter{[]}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{93}{largesymbols}{3}
3855 \DeclareMathDelimiter{/}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{47}{largesymbols}{14}
3856 \DeclareMathSymbol{\mathdollar}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{36}
3857 }
3858 }

```

Finally, we change the font definitions for `\mathrm` and so on. These are defined using the `\g_@@_mathrm_tl` (...) macros, which default to `\rmdefault` but may be specified with the `\setmathrm` (...) commands in the preamble.

Since L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X only generally defines one level of boldness, we omit `\mathbf` in the bold maths series. It can be specified as per usual with `\setboldmathrm`, which stores the appropriate family name in `\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl`.

```

3859 \DeclareSymbolFont{operators}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
3860 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
3861 \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\mathrm{operators}
3862 \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
3863 \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
3864 \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathsf_tl\mddefault\updefault
3865 \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\mddefault\updefault
3866 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
3867 \tl_if_empty:NTF \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
3868 {
3869 \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\itdefault
3870 }
3871 {
3872 \SetMathAlphabet\mathrm{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
3873 \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
3874 \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
3875 }
3876 \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathsf_tl\bfdefault\updefault
3877 \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\bfdefault\updefault
3878 }

```

`\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths`: We're a little less sophisticated about not executing the maths setup if various other maths font packages are loaded. This list is based on the wonderful 'L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Font Catalogue': <http://www.tug.dk/FontCatalogue/mathfonts.html>. I'm sure there are more I've missed. Do the T<sub>E</sub>X Gyre fonts have maths support yet?

Untested: would `\unless\ifnum\Gamma=28672\relax\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi` be a better test? This needs more cooperation with euler and lucida, I think.

```

3879 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:
3880 {
3881   \ifpackageloaded{anttor}
3882   {
3883     \ifx\define@antt@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
3884   }{}
3885   \ifpackageloaded{arevmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3886   \ifpackageloaded{eulervm}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3887   \ifpackageloaded{mathdesign}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3888   \ifpackageloaded{concmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3889   \ifpackageloaded{cmbright}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3890   \ifpackageloaded{mathesf}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3891   \ifpackageloaded{gfsartemis}ia}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3892   \ifpackageloaded{gfsneohellenic}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3893   \ifpackageloaded{iwona}
3894   {
3895     \ifx\define@iwona@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
3896   }{}
3897   \ifpackageloaded{kpfonts}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3898   \ifpackageloaded{kmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3899   \ifpackageloaded{kurier}
3900   {
3901     \ifx\define@kurier@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
3902   }{}
3903   \ifpackageloaded{fouriernc}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3904   \ifpackageloaded{fourier}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3905   \ifpackageloaded{lmodern}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3906   \ifpackageloaded{mathpazo}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3907   \ifpackageloaded{mathptmx}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3908   \ifpackageloaded{MinionPro}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3909   \ifpackageloaded{unicode-math}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3910   \ifpackageloaded{breqn}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
3911   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_math_bool
3912   {
3913     \@@_info:n {setup-math}
3914     \fontspec_setup_maths:
3915   }
3916 }
3917 \AtBeginDocument{\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:}

```

## 41 Closing code

### 41.1 Finishing up

Now we just want to set up loading the `.cfg` file, if it exists.

```

3918 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_cfg_bool
3919 {
3920   \InputIfFileExists{fontspec.cfg}

```

```

3921 {}
3922 {\typeout{No~ fontspec.cfg~ file~ found;~ no~ configuration~ loaded.}}
3923 }

```

## 42 Changes to the NFSS

```
3924 (*fontspec)
```

### 42.1 Italic small caps and so on

`\sishape` These commands for actually selecting italic small caps have been defined for many years; I'm inclined to drop them. They're probably used very infrequently; I personally prefer just writing `\textit{\textsc{...}}` instead.

```

3925 \providecommand*\itscdefault{\itdefault\scdefault}
3926 \providecommand*\slscdefault{\sldefault\scdefault}
3927 \DeclareRobustCommand{\sishape}
3928 {
3929   \not@math@alphabet\sishape\relax
3930   \fontshape{\itscdefault}\selectfont
3931 }
3932 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textsi}{\sishape}

```

ℒ<sub>TEX</sub>'s 'shape' font axis needs to be overloaded to support italic small caps and slanted small caps. These are the combinations to support:

```

3933 \cs_new:Nn \@@_shape_merge:nn { c_@@_shape_#1_#2_tl }
3934 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \itdefault \scdefault } {\itscdefault}
3935 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \sldefault \scdefault } {\slscdefault}
3936 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \scdefault \itdefault } {\itscdefault}
3937 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \scdefault \sldefault } {\slscdefault}
3938 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \slscdefault \itdefault } {\itscdefault}
3939 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \itscdefault \sldefault } {\slscdefault}
3940 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \itscdefault \updefault } {\scdefault}
3941 \tl_const:cn { \@@_shape_merge:nn \slscdefault \updefault } {\scdefault}

```

`\fontspec_merge_shape:n` These macros enable the overload on the `\. .shape` commands. First, a shape 'new+current' (prefix) or 'current+new' (suffix) is tried. If not found, fall back on the 'new' shape.

```

3942 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_merge_shape:n
3943 {
3944   \@@_if_merge_shape:nTF {#1}
3945     { \fontshape { \tl_use:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {#1} } } \selectfont }
3946     { \fontshape {#1} \selectfont }
3947 }

```

The following is rather specific; it only returns true if the merged shape exists, but more importantly also if the merged shape is defined for the current font.

```

3948 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_merge_shape:n {TF}
3949 {
3950   \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
3951     { \tl_if_exist_p:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {#1} } }
3952     {
3953       \cs_if_exist_p:c

```

```

3954     {
3955         \f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/
3956         \tl_use:c { \@@_shape_merge:nn {\f@shape} {#1} }
3957     }
3958 }
3959 \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
3960 }

```

`\itshape` The original `\. .shape` commands are redefined to use the merge shape macro.

```

\scshape 3961 \DeclareRobustCommand \itshape
\upshape 3962 {
\slshape 3963 \not@math@alphabet\itshape\mathit
3964 \fontspec_merge_shape:n\itdefault
3965 }
3966 \DeclareRobustCommand \slshape
3967 {
3968 \not@math@alphabet\slshape\relax
3969 \fontspec_merge_shape:n\sldefault
3970 }
3971 \DeclareRobustCommand \scshape
3972 {
3973 \not@math@alphabet\scshape\relax
3974 \fontspec_merge_shape:n\scdefault
3975 }
3976 \DeclareRobustCommand \upshape
3977 {
3978 \not@math@alphabet\upshape\relax
3979 \fontspec_merge_shape:n\updefault
3980 }

```

## 42.2 Emphasis

`\emfontdeclare`

```

3981 \cs_new_protected:Npn \emfontdeclare #1
3982 {
3983 \prop_clear:N \g_@@_em_prop
3984 \int_zero:N \l_@@_emdef_int
3985 \bool_set_true:N \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
3986
3987 \tl_if_in:nnT {#1} {\slshape}
3988 {
3989 \tl_if_in:nnT {#1} {\itshape}
3990 {
3991 \bool_set_false:N \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
3992 }
3993 }
3994
3995 \group_begin:
3996 \normalfont
3997 \clist_map_inline:nn {\emreset,#1}
3998 {

```



```

3999         ##1
4000         \prop_gput_if_new:NxV \g_@@_em_prop { \f@shape } { \l_@@_emdef_int }
4001         \prop_gput:Nxn \g_@@_em_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_emdef_int } { ##1 }
4002         \int_incr:N \l_@@_emdef_int
4003     }
4004 \group_end:
4005 }

```

\em

```

4006 \DeclareRobustCommand \em
4007 {
4008     \@nomath\em
4009     \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_emshape_query_tl { \f@shape }
4010
4011     \bool_if:NT \g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool
4012     {
4013         \tl_replace_all:Nnn \l_@@_emshape_query_tl {/sl} {/it}
4014     }
4015
4016 <debug> \typeout{Emph~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_em_int}
4017     \prop_get:NxNT \g_@@_em_prop { \l_@@_emshape_query_tl } \l_@@_em_tmp_tl
4018     {
4019         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_em_int { \l_@@_em_tmp_tl }
4020 <debug> \typeout{Shape~ (\l_@@_emshape_query_tl)~ detected;~ new~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_em_i
4021     }
4022
4023     \int_incr:N \l_@@_em_int
4024
4025     \prop_get:NxNTF \g_@@_em_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_em_int } \l_@@_em_switch_tl
4026     { \l_@@_em_switch_tl }
4027     {
4028         \int_zero:N \l_@@_em_int
4029         \emreset
4030     }
4031
4032 }

```

\emph

```

\emshape 4033 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\emph}{\em}
\emminnershape 4034 \cs_set:Npn \emreset { \upshape }
\emreset 4035 \cs_set:Npn \emshape { \itshape }
4036 \cs_set:Npn \emminnershape { \upshape }

```

### 42.3 Strong emphasis

\strongfontdeclare

```

4037 \cs_new_protected:Npn \strongfontdeclare #1
4038 {
4039     \prop_clear:N \g_@@_strong_prop
4040     \int_zero:N \l_@@_strongdef_int
4041

```

```

4042 \group_begin:
4043 \normalfont
4044 \clist_map_inline:nn {\strongreset,#1}
4045 {
4046   ##1
4047   \prop_gput_if_new:NxV \g_@@_strong_prop { \f@series } { \l_@@_strongdef_int }
4048   \prop_gput:Nxn \g_@@_strong_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_strongdef_int } { ##1 }
4049   \int_incr:N \l_@@_strongdef_int
4050 }
4051 \group_end:
4052 }

```

\strongenv

```

4053 \DeclareRobustCommand \strongenv
4054 {
4055   \@nomath\strongenv
4056
4057   (debug) \typeout{Strong~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_strong_int}
4058   \prop_get:NxNT \g_@@_strong_prop { \f@series } \l_@@_strong_tmp_tl
4059   {
4060     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_strong_int { \l_@@_strong_tmp_tl }
4061   (debug) \typeout{Series~ (\f@series)~ detected;~ new~ level:~\int_use:N \l_@@_strong_int}
4062   }
4063
4064   \int_incr:N \l_@@_strong_int
4065
4066   \prop_get:NxNTF \g_@@_strong_prop { switch-\int_use:N \l_@@_strong_int } \l_@@_strong_swit
4067   { \l_@@_strong_switch_tl }
4068   {
4069     \int_zero:N \l_@@_strong_int
4070     \strongreset
4071   }
4072
4073 }

```

\strong

```

\strongreset 4074 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\strong}{\strongenv}
4075 \cs_set:Npn \strongreset {}

```

\reset@font Ensure nesting resets when necessary:

```

4076 \cs_set:Npn \reset@font
4077 {
4078   \normalfont
4079   \int_zero:N \l_@@_em_int
4080   \int_zero:N \l_@@_strong_int
4081 }

```

Programmer's interface for setting nesting levels:

```

4082 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_em_level:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_em_int {#1} }
4083 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_strong_level:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_strong_int {#1} }

```

Defaults:

```
4084 \strongfontdeclare{ \bfseries }
4085 \emfontdeclare{ \emshape, \eminnershape }
4086 \fontspec
```

## 43 Patching code

```
4087 \fontspec
```

### 43.1 \-

\- This macro is courtesy of Frank Mittelbach and the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  source code.

```
4088 \DeclareRobustCommand{\-}
4089 {
4090   \discretionary
4091   {
4092     \char\ifnum\hyphenchar\font<\z@
4093       \xlx@defaultthyphenchar
4094     \else
4095       \hyphenchar\font
4096     \fi
4097   }{}{}
4098 }
4099 \def\xlx@defaultthyphenchar{\-}
```

### 43.2 Verbatims

Many thanks to Apostolos Syropoulos for discovering this problem and writing the redefinition of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's `verbatim` environment and `\verb*` command.

`\fontspec_visible_space`: Print U+2423: OPEN BOX, which is used to visibly display a space character.

```
4100 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_visible_space:
4101 {
4102   \@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \font {"2423}
4103   { \char"2423\scan_stop: }
4104   { \fontspec_visible_space_fallback: }
4105 }
```

`\fontspec_visible_space_fallback`: If the current font doesn't have U+2423: OPEN BOX, use Latin Modern Mono instead.

```
4106 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_visible_space_fallback:
4107 {
4108   {
4109     \usefont{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{lmtt}{\f@series}{\f@shape}
4110     \textvisiblespace
4111   }
4112 }
```

`\fontspec_print_visible_spaces`: Helper macro to turn spaces ( $\text{\LaTeX}$ ) active and print visible space instead.

```
4113 \group_begin:
4114 \char_set_catcode_active:n{"20}%
```

```

4115 \cs_gset:Npn\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:{%
4116 \char_set_catcode_active:n{"20}%
4117 \cs_set_eq:NN^20\fontspec_visible_space:%
4118 }%
4119 \group_end:

```

`\verb` Redefine `\verb` to use `\fontspec_print_visible_spaces`.

```

\verb* 4120 \def\verb
4121 {
4122   \relax\ifmmode\hbox\else\leavevmode\null\fi
4123   \bgroup
4124   \verb@eol@error \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
4125   \verbatim@font\@noligs
4126   \@ifstar\@sverb\@verb
4127 }
4128 \def\@sverb{\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:\@sverb}

```

It's better to put small things into `\AtBeginDocument`, so here we go:

```

4129 \AtBeginDocument
4130 {
4131   \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
4132   \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
4133   \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
4134   \fontspec_patch_listings:
4135 }

```

`verbatim*` With the `verbatim` package.

```

4136 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
4137 {
4138   \@ifpackageloaded{verbatim}
4139   {
4140     \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*}
4141     {
4142       \group_begin: \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
4143     }
4144   }

```

This is for vanilla  $\LaTeX$ .

```

4145 {
4146   \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*}
4147   {
4148     \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \@sxverbatim
4149   }
4150 }
4151 }

```

`listingcont*` This is for `moreverb`. The main `listing*` environment inherits this definition.

```

4152 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
4153 {
4154   \@ifpackageloaded{moreverb}{
4155     \cs_set:cpn {listingcont*}
4156     {

```

```

4157     \cs_set:Npn \verbatim@processline
4158     {
4159         \thelisting@line \global\advance\listing@line\c_one
4160         \the\verbatim@line\par
4161     }
4162     \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
4163 }
4164 }{}
4165 }

```

listings and fancvrb make things nice and easy:

```

4166 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
4167 {
4168     \@ifpackageloaded{fancyvrb}
4169     {
4170         \cs_set_eq:NN \FancyVerbSpace \fontspec_visible_space:
4171     }{}
4172 }

4173 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_listings:
4174 {
4175     \@ifpackageloaded{listings}
4176     {
4177         \cs_set_eq:NN \lst@visiblespace \fontspec_visible_space:
4178     }{}
4179 }

```

### 4.3.3 \oldstylenums

`\oldstylenums` This command obviously needs a redefinition. And we may as well provide the reverse `\liningnums` command.

```

4180 \RenewDocumentCommand \oldstylenums {m}
4181 {
4182     { \addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle} #1 }
4183 }
4184 \NewDocumentCommand \liningnums {m}
4185 {
4186     { \addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining} #1 }
4187 }

4188 </fontspec>

```

## Index

Numbers written in *italics* refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in *roman* refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols	
\#	..... 1952, 1953, 1984
\,	..... 1757, 2679–2683
\-	..... 1704, <u>4088</u>
\@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn	... <u>1574</u>
\@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx	..... ..... 1556, 1563, 1592
\@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn	..... ..... 1375–1380, <u>1395</u> , 2367
\@@_aff_error:n	2108, 2421, 2462, 2494
\@@_calc_scale:n	... 2374, 2375, <u>2380</u>
\@@_check_lang:n	..... 1848
\@@_check_lang:nTF	..... .. 961, 978, <u>1848</u> , 2980, 3002, 3009
\@@_check_ot_feat:n	..... 1881
\@@_check_ot_feat:nF	..... 1800
\@@_check_ot_feat:nTF	..... ..... 906, 927, 1656, <u>1881</u>
\@@_check_script:n	..... 1819
\@@_check_script:nTF	..... ..... 942, 1241, <u>1819</u> , 2946, 2963
\@@_combo_sc_shape:n	..... ..... 1564, 1568, 1613, 1621
\@@_construct_font_call:nn	..... .. 1037, 1200, 1202, 1205, 1207, <u>1210</u> , 1344, 1460, 1461, 1481, 1550
\@@_construct_font_call:nnnnnn	.. ..... 1210, 1219
\@@_declare_shape:nnnn	..... <u>1484</u>
\@@_declare_shape:nnxx	..... 1471
\@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nn	..... ..... 1496, <u>1596</u>
\@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn	..... ..... 1495, <u>1584</u>
\@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn	..... ..... 1493, <u>1554</u>
\@@_declare_shapes_smcaps:nn	..... ..... 1494, <u>1559</u>
\@@_define_aat_feature:nnnn	..... ..... 749, 2048, 3570– 3589, 3598–3602, 3604–3611, 3613–3622, 3624–3626, 3628– 3631, 3633–3635, 3670–3675, 3677–3683, 3685–3692, 3694–3705
\@@_define_aat_feature_group:n	.. .. 744, <u>2046</u> , 3569, 3597, 3603, 3612, 3623, 3627, 3632, 3636, 3648, 3659, 3669, 3676, 3684, 3693
\@@_define_opentype_feature:nnnnn	..... 759, 1745, 1781–1783, 1787, 1788, 2685, 2706, 2719, 2738, 2754, 2770, 2782, 2788–2790, 2792, 2797– 2799, 2802, 2825, 2826, 2828, 2848
\@@_define_opentype_feature_group:n	..... 754, <u>1741</u> , 2684, 2705, 2718, 2737, 2753, 2769, 2781, 2791, 2801, 2827, 2847, 2865, 2874, 2887, 2900, 2921, 2930
\@@_define_opentype_onoffreset:nnnnn	..... <u>1777</u> , 2691–2696, 2711–2717, <u>2728</u> –2732, 2736, 2747–2752, 2763–2768, 2777– 2780, 2787, 2800, 2815–2824, 2839–2846, 2858–2864, 2866–2873
\@@_define_opentype_onreset:nnnnn	..... <u>1785</u> , 2704
\@@_error:n	..... 130, 1506, 3796
\@@_error:nn	..... 131, 3717, 3723, 3729, 3735, 3741, 3772, 3779
\@@_error:nx	132, 1203, 1482, 2111, 2490
\@@_extract_all_features:	... <u>1159</u>
\@@_extract_all_features:n	1087, 1159
\@@_feat_off:n	..... 1777, 1782
\@@_feat_prop_add:nn	..... ..... 1745, 1757, 2679–2683
\@@_feat_reset:n	... 1778, 1783, 1788
\@@_find_autofonts:	..... 1332, <u>1352</u>
\@@_font_is_file:	..... 1036, 2127
\@@_font_is_file:,\@@_font_is_name:	..... ..... <u>1227</u>
\@@_font_is_name:	..... 1693
\@@_font_suppress_not_found_error:	..... ..... 431, 446, 834, 1072
\@@_fontname_wrap:n	..... ..... 1212, 1213, 1229, 1233
\@@_get_features:Nn	..... ..... 840, 1095, <u>1265</u> , 1544

\@@_head_ii:n .....	106	\@@_main_defaultfontfeatures:nnn	
\@@_head_ii:w .....	106, 107	.....	510, 673
\@@_if_autofont:nn .....	1458	\@@_main_fontspec:nn .....	466, 560
\@@_if_autofont:nnTF .....	1450	\@@_main_newAATfeature:nnnn	526, 741
\@@_if_detect_external:n .....	1123	\@@_main_newfontface:nnn	506, 669
\@@_if_detect_external:nT .....		\@@_main_newfontfamily:nnn	502, 656
.....	1036, 1079, 1123	\@@_main_newfontfeature:nn	522, 731
\@@_if_font_feature:n .....	830	\@@_main_newopentypefeature:nnn	
\@@_if_font_feature:nTF .....	828	.....	530, 534, 751
\@@_if_merge_shape:n .....	3948	\@@_main_setboldmathrm:nn	486, 624
\@@_if_merge_shape:nTF ...	1050, 3944	\@@_main_setmainfont:nn	470, 498, 567
\@@_info:n .....	136, 1252, 2397, 3913	\@@_main_setmathrm:nn	482, 618
\@@_info:nx .....	137, 1452	\@@_main_setmathsf:nn	490, 630
\@@_info:nxx .....	138, 1335	\@@_main_setmathtt:nn	494, 636
\@@_init: .....	835, 1035, 1073, 1688	\@@_main_setmonofont:nn	478, 601
\@@_init_fontface: .....	1268, 1710	\@@_main_setsansfont:nn	474, 584
\@@_init_ttc:n .....	1084, 1135	\@@_make_AAT_feature:nn	
\@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn	109, 2528	.....	2052, 2055, 3644, 3655
\@@_iv_str_to_num:Nn .....	925,	\@@_make_AAT_feature_string:nn	2067
926, 977, 1720, 1825, 1854, 1894		\@@_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF	
\@@_iv_str_to_num:w ..	1727, 1728, 1730	.....	864, 1665, 2060, 2067
\@@_keys_define_code:nnn		\@@_make_OT_feature:nnn	1772,
.....	2104, 2110, 2113, 2117,	1790, 1815, 2879, 2883, 2927, 2936	
2121, 2133, 2134, 2143, 2177,		\@@_make_OT_feature:xxx	2895, 2906
2182, 2187, 2194, 2199, 2204,		\@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn	1387, 1466
2208, 2212, 2237, 2248, 2252,		\@@_make_ot_smallcaps:TF	1653
2256, 2260, 2271, 2275, 2282,		\@@_make_smallcaps:TF	1521, 1653, 1659
2286, 2290, 2294, 2298, 2305,		\@@_msg_new:nnn	
2310, 2316, 2320, 2324, 2328,		.....	142, 147, 152, 156, 177,
2332, 2336, 2340, 2347, 2370,		217, 223, 227, 237, 241, 246, 250,	
2416, 2442, 2463, 2467, 2471,		255, 260, 265, 271, 275, 282, 286,	
2495, 2525, 2541, 2545, 2551,		290, 294, 299, 303, 308, 313, 317,	
2562, 2566, 2570, 2671, 2675, 2992		325, 329, 333, 337, 341, 346, 351	
\@@_keys_set_known:nnN	99	\@@_msg_new:nnnn	
\@@_keys_set_known:nxN	1187,	..	144, 161, 170, 181, 191, 199, 207
1192, 1194, 1269, 1271, 1401, 1469		\@@_ot_compat:nn	3022, 3026-3042
\@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn		\@@_preparse_features:	1092, 1183
.....	1085, 1144, 1478	\@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:Nn	
\@@_load_font: .....	1093, 1197	.....	452
\@@_load_fontname:n .....		\@@_primitive_font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF	
.....	1470, 1475, 1510, 1531	.....	452, 2485, 4102
\@@_main_DeclareFontsExtensions:n		\@@_primitive_font_gset:Nnn	1206
.....	554, 818	\@@_primitive_font_if_exist:n	443
\@@_main_IfFontFeatureActiveTF:nnn		\@@_primitive_font_if_exist:nTF	1037
.....	558, 824	\@@_primitive_font_if_null:N	435
\@@_main_addfontfeatures:n		\@@_primitive_font_if_null:NT	
.....	514, 518, 707	.....	1203, 1482
\@@_main_aliasfontfeature:nn	538, 767	\@@_primitive_font_if_null:NnTF	448
\@@_main_aliasfontfeatureoption:nnn		\@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn	447,
.....	542, 786	861, 880, 893, 921, 938, 953, 972,	
		989, 1006, 1201, 1460, 1461, 1481	

\@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn,\@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn	423	\@@_primitive_font_set:Nnn	2479, 2509, 2520, 2532, 2960, 2965, 2970, 2987, 3016
\@@_primitive_font_set_hyphenchar:Nn	460, 2476, 2488	\@@_warning:nxx	135, 747, 757, 1101
\@@_remove_clashing_featstr:n	1679, 1763, 1809	\@sverb	4126, 4128
\@@_sanitize_fontname:Nn	691, 1075-1077, 1109, 1139-1141, 1149	\@filelist	408
\@@_save_family:nn	1100, 1329	\@ifpackageloaded	3783, 3792, 3799-3801, 3881, 3885-3893, 3897-3899, 3903-3910, 4138, 4154, 4168, 4175
\@@_save_family_needed:n	1300	\@ifstar	4126
\@@_save_family_needed:nTF	1098, 1300	\@makeother	4124
\@@_save_fontinfo:n	1331, 1337	\@noligs	4125
\@@_select_font_family:nn	717, 720, 1021, 1028, 1068, 1108	\@nomath	4008, 4055
\@@_set_autofont:Nnn	1356-1358, 1363, 1368, 1371, 1442	\@onlypreamble	649-652
\@@_set_default_features:nn	676, 680	\@sverb	4128
\@@_set_faces:	1334, 1373	\@sxverbatim	4148
\@@_set_faces_aux:nnnn	1382, 1384	\@tempa	3815, 3816
\@@_set_font_default_features:nnn	677, 685	\@verb	4126
\@@_set_font_dimen:NnN	2388, 2389, 2400	\@verbatim	4142, 4148, 4162
\@@_set_font_type:	881, 894, 922, 939, 954, 973, 990, 1007, 1204, 1409	\[	435, 443
\@@_set_scriptlang:	1094, 1235	\	11, 158, 166, 167, 230-232, 243, 279, 296, 305, 310, 320-322, 343, 348, 354-356, 1600, 1612, 1626
\@@_setboldmathrm_hook:nn	628, 648	\_dim_eval:w	111
\@@_setmainfont_hook:nn	580, 642	\_dim_eval_end:	111
\@@_setmathrm_hook:nn	622, 645	\_fontspec_update_featstr:n	3665
\@@_setmathsf_hook:nn	634, 646	\_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w	2419, 2422
\@@_setmathtt_hook:nn	640, 647		
\@@_setmonofont_hook:nn	614, 644	<b>A</b>	
\@@_setsansfont_hook:nn	597, 643	\acute	3804
\@@_setup_nfss:Nnnn	1511, 1536, 1540	\add@unicode@accent	3710, 3712, 3724
\@@_setup_single_size:nn	1491, 1499	\addfontfeature	229, 516, 4182, 4186
\@@_shape_merge:nn	1052, 1570, 1571, 3933-3941, 3945, 3951, 3956	\addfontfeatures	209, 512, 707
\@@_strip_leading_sign:Nw	1722, 1724	\advance	4159
\@@_strip_plus_minus:n	760, 762	\aliasfontfeature	536, 767, 2132, 2524, 2886, 2899, 3658
\@@_strip_plus_minus_aux:Nq	762, 763	\aliasfontfeatureoption	540, 786, 2733-2735, 3024
\@@_swap_plus_minus:n	1810, 1816	\AtBeginDocument	411, 3917, 4129
\@@_swap_plus_minus_aux:Nq	1816, 1817		
\@@_trace:n	139	<b>B</b>	
\@@_update_featstr:n	737, 1292, 1296, 1669, 1812, 2062, 2469, 2564, 2568, 2580, 2599, 2607, 2616, 2673, 2677	\bar	3808
\@@_warning:n	133, 362, 387, 393, 2058, 2190, 2555, 2559, 2586, 2624	\bfdefault	1376, 1379, 1380, 1604, 1607, 1608, 1616, 1618, 1620, 2224, 2225, 2227, 3863, 3866, 3869, 3873, 3876, 3877
\@@_warning:nx	134, 727, 784, 816, 1802, 2064,	\bfseries	4084
		\bgroup	4123
		\bool_if:NF	381, 783, 815, 1361, 1366, 1444, 1517, 1534, 1672,





<code>\cs_set:Npn</code> . . . . .	106, 107, 419, 423, 427, 431, 1233, 1688, 1724, 1730, 2422, 2514, 4034–4036, 4075, 4076, 4136, 4152, 4157, 4166, 4173	<code>\discretionary</code> . . . . .	4090
<code>\cs_set_eq:cN</code> . . . . .	1308	<code>\do</code> . . . . .	4124
<code>\cs_set_eq:NN</code> . . . . .	418, 421, 642–648, 1041, 1108, 1229, 4117, 4170, 4177	<code>\dospecials</code> . . . . .	4124
<code>\cs_to_str:N</code> . . . . .	658, 663, 690	<code>\dot</code> . . . . .	3812
<code>\cs_undefine:c</code> . . . . .	1579, 2343, 2345, 3780		
<code>\cyrillicencoding</code> . . . . .	409, 413		
	<b>D</b>		
<code>\ddot</code> . . . . .	3806		
<code>\DeclareDocumentCommand</code> . . . . .	3714, 3720, 3726, 3732, 3738, 3744, 3769, 3776		
<code>\DeclareErrorFont</code> . . . . .	3747		
<code>\DeclareFontEncoding</code> . . . . .	388, 3746		
<code>\DeclareFontFamily</code> . . . . .	1333, 3749		
<code>\DeclareFontsExtensions</code> . . . . .	552, 818		
<code>\DeclareFontShape</code> . . . . .			
	1581, 3751, 3753, 3755, 3757, 3759		
<code>\DeclareFontSubstitution</code> . . . . .	389, 3748		
<code>\DeclareMathAccent</code> . . . . .	3804–3813		
<code>\DeclareMathDelimiter</code> . . . . .	3851–3855		
<code>\DeclareMathSymbol</code> . . . . .			
	3817, 3822–3825, 3828–3850, 3856		
<code>\DeclareOption</code> . . . . .	361, 363–369, 374		
<code>\DeclareRobustCommand</code> . . . . .			
	571, 588, 605, 661, 3927, 3961, 3966, 3971, 3976, 4006, 4053, 4088		
<code>\DeclareSymbolFont</code> . . . . .	3802, 3859		
<code>\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet</code> . . . . .	3861		
<code>\DeclareTextCommand</code> . . . . .	3712, 3718, 3724		
<code>\DeclareTextComposite</code> . . . . .	3736		
<code>\DeclareTextCompositeCommand</code> . . . . .	3742		
<code>\DeclareTextFontCommand</code> . . . . .			
	3932, 4033, 4074		
<code>\DeclareTextSymbol</code> . . . . .	3730		
<code>\DeclareUnicodeAccent</code> . . . . .	3711		
<code>\DeclareUnicodeEncoding</code> . . . . .	150, 3744		
<code>\def</code> . . . . .	4099, 4120, 4128		
<code>\defaultfontfeatures</code> . . . . .	508, 673		
<code>\define@antt@mathversions</code> . . . . .	3883		
<code>\define@iwona@mathversions</code> . . . . .	3895		
<code>\define@kurier@mathversions</code> . . . . .	3901		
<code>\Delta</code> . . . . .	3839		
<code>\dim_compare:nNnT</code> . . . . .	2403		
<code>\dim_new:N</code> . . . . .	55–57		
<code>\dim_set:Nn</code> . . . . .	2402		
<code>\dim_to_fp:n</code> . . . . .	2393, 2394		
<code>\directlua</code> . . . . .	5, 1843, 1873, 1913		
		<b>E</b>	
		<code>\else</code> . . . . .	439, 1736, 1737, 1834, 1864, 1903, 4094, 4122
		<code>\else:</code> . . . . .	456
		<code>\em</code> . . . . .	4006, 4033
		<code>\emfontdeclare</code> . . . . .	3981, 4085
		<code>\emminnershape</code> . . . . .	4033, 4085
		<code>\emph</code> . . . . .	4033
		<code>\emreset</code> . . . . .	3997, 4029, 4033
		<code>\emshape</code> . . . . .	4033, 4085
		<code>\EncodingAccent</code> . . . . .	3720
		<code>\EncodingCommand</code> . . . . .	3714
		<code>\EncodingComposite</code> . . . . .	3732
		<code>\EncodingCompositeCommand</code> . . . . .	3738
		<code>\encodingdefault</code> . . . . .	579, 596, 613, 2384
		<code>\EncodingSymbol</code> . . . . .	3726
		<code>\endinput</code> . . . . .	6, 8, 15
		environments:	
		<code>listingcont*</code> . . . . .	4152
		<code>verbatim*</code> . . . . .	4136
		<code>\ERROROR</code> . . . . .	1278
		<code>\etex_iffontchar:D</code> . . . . .	454
		<code>\ExecuteOptions</code> . . . . .	379
		<code>\exp_after:wN</code> . . . . .	1504
		<code>\exp_args:Nnnx</code> . . . . .	759
		<code>\exp_args:Nnx</code> . . . . .	1781–1783, 1787, 1788
		<code>\exp_args:No</code> . . . . .	1154
		<code>\exp_args:NV</code> . . . . .	848
		<code>\exp_args:Nx</code> . . . . .	1129, 1491, 1809
		<code>\exp_args:Nxx</code> . . . . .	1044
		<code>\exp_not:N</code> . . . . .	149, 573–575, 590– 592, 607–609, 661, 663–665, 843, 844, 1148, 1267, 1601, 1613, 1626, 2903, 2904, 2907, 2915, 2916
		<code>\exp_not:n</code> . . . . .	571, 588, 605, 827, 1125, 1267, 1600, 1612, 1792
		<b>F</b>	
		<code>\f@encoding</code> . . . . .	1058, 1061, 1062, 3955
		<code>\f@family</code> . . . . .	562, 714, 715, 854, 860, 879, 892, 897, 900, 903, 904, 920, 937, 952, 957, 959, 971, 988, 993, 1005, 1010, 1058, 1061, 1062, 3955
		<code>\f@series</code> . . . . .	1058, 1061, 1062, 3955, 4047, 4058, 4061, 4109

<code>\f@shape</code> .....	1052,	<code>\fontspec_if_language:nTF</code> ....	<u>1</u> , <u>948</u>
	3945, 395I, 3956, 4000, 4009, 4109	<code>\fontspec_if_opentype:</code> .....	875
<code>\f@size</code> .....	861, 880, 893,	<code>\fontspec_if_opentype:TF</code> ....	<u>1</u> , <u>875</u>
	92I, 938, 953, 972, 989, 1006,	<code>\fontspec_if_script:n</code> .....	933
	1202, 1207, 1460, 146I, 148I, 1579	<code>\fontspec_if_script:nTF</code> .....	<u>1</u> , <u>933</u>
<code>\familydefault</code> .....	578, 595, 612	<code>\fontspec_if_small_caps:</code> .....	1048
<code>\FancyVerbSpace</code> .....	4170	<code>\fontspec_if_small_caps:TF</code> ..	<u>1</u> , <u>1048</u>
<code>\fi</code> .....	44I, 1424, 1427,	<code>\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:</code> ..	<u>3879</u>
	1736, 1737, 1836, 1866, 1905,	<code>\fontspec_merge_shape:n</code> .....	
	38I8, 3883, 3895, 390I, 4096, 4122	....	<u>3942</u> , 3964, 3969, 3974, 3979
<code>\fi:</code> .....	458	<code>\fontspec_new_lang:nn</code> .....	550, 2977
<code>\file_if_exist:nT</code> .....	1154	<code>\fontspec_new_script:nn</code> ...	546, 2940
<code>\file_if_exist:nTF</code> .....	383	<code>\fontspec_parse_colour:viii</code> .....	
<code>\file_input:n</code> .....	1155	.....	2506, 2514
<code>\font 425, 429, 1045, 2388, 2407, 2428-</code>		<code>\fontspec_parse_cv:w</code> .....	2903, 2915
	2430, 2436-2438, 2449, 2454,	<code>\fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:</code>	4133, 4166
	2459, 2476, 2488, 4092, 4095, 4102	<code>\fontspec_patch_listings:</code>	4134, 4173
<code>\fontdimen</code> .....	2402, 2428-	<code>\fontspec_patch_moreverb:</code>	4132, 4152
	2430, 2436-2438, 2449, 2454, 2459	<code>\fontspec_patch_verbatim:</code>	4131, 4136
<code>\fontencoding</code> .....		<code>\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:</code> .	
....	563, 573, 590, 607, 664, 2384	....	<u>4113</u> , 4128, 4142, 4148, 4162
<code>\fontfamily</code> 574, 59I, 608, 663, 724, 2385		<code>\fontspec_select:nn</code> .....	<u>1108</u>
<code>\fontname</code> .....	1045, 1462	<code>\fontspec_set_em_level:n</code> .....	4082
<code>\fontshape</code> .....	3930, 3945, 3946	<code>\fontspec_set_family:cnn</code> .....	658
<code>\fontspec</code> .....	464, <u>560</u>	<code>\fontspec_set_family:Nnn</code> .....	
<code>\fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn</code> ..		<u>1</u> , 562, 569, 586, 603, 620, 62I,	
	. 1386, <u>1389</u> , 2206, 2210, 2220,	626, 627, 632, 633, 638, 639, <u>1018</u>	
	2245, 2250, 2254, 2258, 2268, 2334	<code>\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn</code> ..	<u>1</u> , <u>1025</u>
<code>\fontspec_font_if_exist:n</code> ....	<u>1032</u>	<code>\fontspec_set_strong_level:n</code> ..	4083
<code>\fontspec_font_if_exist:nTF</code> ..	<u>1</u> , <u>1041</u>	<code>\fontspec_setup_maths:</code> ...	<u>3783</u> , 3914
<code>\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn</code> ....	856	<code>\fontspec_tmp:</code> .....	418, 421
<code>\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF</code> ..	<u>1</u> , <u>856</u>	<code>\fontspec_visible_space:</code> .....	
<code>\fontspec_if_current_feature:n</code>	1042	.....	<u>4100</u> , <u>4117</u> , <u>4170</u> , <u>4177</u>
<code>\fontspec_if_current_feature:nTF</code>		<code>\fontspec_visible_space_fallback:</code>	
.....	<u>1</u> , <u>848</u> , <u>1042</u>	.....	<u>4104</u> , <u>4106</u>
<code>\fontspec_if_current_language:n</code>	1001	<code>\FontspecSetCheckBoolFalse</code> ....	24
<code>\fontspec_if_current_language:nTF</code>		<code>\FontspecSetCheckBoolTrue</code> .....	23
.....	<u>1</u> , <u>1001</u>	<code>\fp_eval:n</code> .....	2393
<code>\fontspec_if_current_script:n</code> ..	984	<code>\fp_new:N</code> .....	53, 54
<code>\fontspec_if_current_script:nTF</code>	<u>1</u> , <u>984</u>		
<code>\fontspec_if_feature:n</code> .....	888		
<code>\fontspec_if_feature:nnn</code> .....	916		
<code>\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF</code> ...	<u>1</u> , <u>916</u>		
<code>\fontspec_if_feature:nTF</code> .....	<u>1</u> , <u>888</u>		
<code>\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:</code> ....	852		
<code>\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF</code> ...			
.....	<u>1</u> , 710, <u>852</u> , 858, 877,		
	890, 918, 935, 950, 969, 986, 1003		
<code>\fontspec_if_language:n</code> .....	948		
<code>\fontspec_if_language:nn</code> .....	967		
<code>\fontspec_if_language:nnTF</code> ...	<u>1</u> , <u>967</u>		

## G

<code>\g_@@_all_keyval_modules_clist</code> ..	
.....	60, 772, 790, 2098
<code>\g_@@_all_opentype_feature_names_prop</code>	
.....	66, 1924-2045
<code>\g_@@_bf_series_seq</code> 58, 2202, 2222, 2225	
<code>\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl</code> .....	
...	69, 626, 627, 3867, 3872-3874
<code>\g_@@_cfg_bool</code> .....	35, 365, 366, 3918

<code>\g_@@_curr_series_tl</code> . . . . .	1699, 2201, 2224, 2227, 2230, 2233, 2280	1580, 2398, 3819, 4004, 4051, 4119
<code>\g_@@_default_fontopts_clist</code> . . . . .	59, 683, 1176	
<code>\g_@@_em_normalise_slant_bool</code> . . . . .	44, 3985, 3991, 4011	
<code>\g_@@_em_prop</code> . . . . .	67, 3983, 4000, 4001, 4017, 4025	
<code>\g_@@_euenc_bool</code> . . . . .	37, 367, 368, 381, 394, 397, 416	
<code>\g_@@_fontopts_prop</code> . . . . .	62, 695, 698, 702, 703, 1152, 1167, 1170, 1479	
<code>\g_@@_hexcol_tl</code> . . . . .	94, 96, 1295, 1715	
<code>\g_@@_math_bool</code> . . . . .	36, 363, 364, 3883, 3885–3892, 3895, 3897, 3898, 3901, 3903–3911	
<code>\g_@@_math_euler_bool</code> . . . . .	32, 3795, 3820	
<code>\g_@@_math_lucida_bool</code> . . . . .	33, 3799–3801, 3826	
<code>\g_@@_mathrm_tl</code> . . . . .	68, 620, 621, 653, 3859, 3860, 3862, 3863, 3866, 3869	
<code>\g_@@_mathsf_tl</code> . . . . .	70, 632, 633, 654, 3864, 3876	
<code>\g_@@_mathtt_tl</code> . . . . .	71, 638, 639, 655, 3865, 3877	
<code>\g_@@_opacity_tl</code> . . . . .	95, 97, 1295, 1714, 2517, 2529	
<code>\g_@@_OT_features_prop</code> . . . . .	65, 1749, 1751	
<code>\g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool</code> . . . . .	34, 3785, 3788, 3794	
<code>\g_@@_postadjust_tl</code> . . . . .	98, 1716	
<code>\g_@@_rmfamily_family</code> . . . . .	569, 570, 574	
<code>\g_@@_sffamily_family</code> . . . . .	586, 587, 591	
<code>\g_@@_single_feat_tl</code> . . . . .	832, 844, 846, 848, 1674, 2153, 2166, 2951, 2984, 2996, 3006, 3013	
<code>\g_@@_strong_prop</code> . . . . .	4039, 4047, 4048, 4058, 4066	
<code>\g_@@_ttfamily_family</code> . . . . .	603, 604, 608	
<code>\g_fontspeg_encoding_tl</code> . . . . .	399, 400, 402, 406, 407, 409, 410, 413, 414, 1700, 3859, 3860, 3862–3866, 3869, 3872–3874, 3876, 3877, 4109	
<code>\Gamma</code> . . . . .	3838	
<code>\global</code> . . . . .	429, 4159	
<code>\grave</code> . . . . .	3805	
<code>\group_begin:</code> . . . . .	445, 712, 833, 1034, 1071, 1468, 1577, 2382, 3814, 3995, 4042, 4113, 4142	
<code>\group_end:</code> . . . . .	449, 450, 723, 841, 1038, 1039, 1106, 1472,	
		<code>H</code>
		<code>\hat</code> . . . . . 3811
		<code>\hbox</code> . . . . . 4122
		<code>\hyphenchar</code> . . . . . 4092, 4095
		<code>I</code>
		<code>\IfBooleanTF</code> . . . . . 682, 693
		<code>\ifcase</code> . . . . . 1418
		<code>\IfFontExistsTF</code> . . . . . 1041
		<code>\IfFontFeatureActiveTF</code> . . . . . 556, 824
		<code>\ifmmode</code> . . . . . 4122
		<code>\IfNoValueTF</code> . . . . . 675
		<code>\ifnum</code> . . . . . 1422, 1831, 1861, 1899, 4092
		<code>\ifx</code> . . . . . 437, 1736, 1737, 3816, 3883, 3895, 3901
		<code>\ignorespaces</code> 565, 582, 599, 616, 678, 729
		<code>\ImportEncoding</code> . . . . . 154
		<code>\InputIfFileExists</code> . . . . . 3920
		<code>\int_case:nnF</code> . . . . . 2408
		<code>\int_compare:nT</code> . . . . . 2352, 2536
		<code>\int_compare:nTF</code> . . . . . 233, 2073, 2149, 2502, 2505
		<code>\int_compare:p:nNn</code> . . . . . 1829, 1859, 1897
		<code>\int_gincr:c</code> . . . . . 1317
		<code>\int_if_even:nTF</code> . . . . . 2078
		<code>\int_incr:N</code> . . . . . 1835, 1865, 1904, 4002, 4023, 4049, 4064
		<code>\int_new:c</code> . . . . . 1318
		<code>\int_new:N</code> . . . . . 45–52
		<code>\int_set:Nn</code> . . . . . 111, 113, 898, 901, 958, 1704, 1732, 1826, 1833, 1855, 1863, 1888, 1902, 2527, 2949, 2967, 2983, 3004, 3011, 4019, 4060, 4082, 4083
		<code>\int_set_eq:NN</code> . . . . . 433
		<code>\int_to_hex:n</code> . . . . . 2537
		<code>\int_use:c</code> . . . . . 1322
		<code>\int_use:N</code> . . . . . 4001, 4016, 4020, 4025, 4048, 4057, 4061, 4066
		<code>\int_zero:N</code> . . . . . 1705– 1707, 1827, 1857, 1895, 2995, 3984, 4028, 4040, 4069, 4079, 4080
		<code>\itdefault</code> . . . . . 1377, 1379, 1588, 1589, 1593, 1605, 1607, 3862, 3869, 3874, 3925, 3934, 3936, 3938, 3964
		<code>\itscdefault</code> . . . . . 1617, 1618, 3925, 3930, 3934, 3936, 3938–3940
		<code>\itshape</code> . . . . . 3961, 3989, 4035

<b>K</b>	
\keys_define:nn . . . . .	733,
778, 796, 803, 810, 1743, 1760,	
1767, 2047, 2050, 2106, 2144,	
2595, 2603, 2612, 2622, 2627,	
2649, 2698, 2875, 2888, 2909,	
2922, 2931, 2939, 2942, 2976,	
2979, 2998, 3590, 3637, 3649, 3660	
\keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT . . . . .	746, 756
\keys_if_exist:nnF . . . . .	743, 753
\keys_if_exist:nnT . . . . .	774, 792, 800, 807
\keys_set:nn . . . . .	114,
779, 797, 804, 811, 1080, 2129,	
2139, 2179, 2184, 2557, 2988, 3017	
\keys_set:nV . . . . .	1277, 1283, 1288
\keys_set:nX . . . . .	1248, 1249, 1260, 1261
\keys_set_known:nn . . . . .	1082
\keys_set_known:nnN . . . . .	102, 115, 713
\keys_set_known:nxN . . . . .	1504
<b>L</b>	
\l_@@_alias_bool . . . . .	. . . 39, 770, 777, 783, 788, 795, 815
\l_@@_all_features_clist . . . . .	. 320, 1088, 1164, 1174, 1188, 1341
\l_@@_arg_tl 2349, 2350, 2352, 2357, 2362	
\l_@@_atsui_bool . . . . .	26,
862, 1282, 1414, 1421, 1430, 1664	
\l_@@_basename_tl . . . . .	1077, 1392
\l_@@_check_bool . . . . .	. . . 22–24, 1896, 1901, 1907, 1920
\l_@@_check_feat_bool 1795, 1797, 1798	
\l_@@_curr_bfname_tl . . . . .	. . . . 2220, 2228, 2230, 2233, 2280
\l_@@_curr_fontname_tl . . . . .	1386, 1387
\l_@@_defining_encoding_bool . . . . .	. . . . . 42, 3716, 3722, 3728,
3734, 3740, 3764, 3766, 3771, 3778	
\l_@@_disable_defaults_bool . . . . .	. . . . . 38, 716, 1162
\l_@@_em_int . . . . .	49, 4016, 4019,
4020, 4023, 4025, 4028, 4079, 4082	
\l_@@_em_switch_tl . . . . .	4025, 4026
\l_@@_em_tmp_tl . . . . .	4017, 4019
\l_@@_emdef_int . . . . .	. . 50, 3984, 4000–4002
\l_@@_emshape_query_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 4009, 4013, 4017, 4020
\l_@@_ext_filename_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 1150, 1151, 1154, 1155
\l_@@_extension_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 1118, 1137, 1221, 2136, 2142, 2189
\l_@@_extensions_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 820, 821, 1113, 1126
\l_@@_external_bool 40, 1444, 2125, 2137	
\l_@@_fake_embolden_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 74, 2638, 2641, 2655
\l_@@_fake_slant_tl 73, 2633, 2660, 2663	
\l_@@_family_fontopts_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 1170, 1171, 1177
\l_@@_family_label_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 72, 1020, 1027, 1170, 1172
\l_@@_firsttime_bool 18, 838, 1096,	
1237, 1672, 1692, 2300, 2418,	
2508, 2519, 2531, 2585, 2631, 2653	
\l_@@_font_path_tl . . . . .	1233, 1694, 2126
\l_@@_fontcfg_bool . . . . .	. . . . . 30, 31, 1146, 2115, 2119
\l_@@_fontdef_tl 860, 861, 879, 880,	
892, 893, 920, 921, 937, 938, 952,	
953, 971, 972, 988, 989, 1005, 1006	
\l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 83, 1376, 2277, 2656
\l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist . . . . .	85,
1379, 2288, 2640, 2642, 2662, 2664	
\l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 87, 1380, 2296
\l_@@_fontfeat_clist . . . . .	839, 1195, 1269
\l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 1515, 1524, 1537
\l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 84, 1377, 2284, 2634
\l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist 88, 1515, 2302	
\l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist 86, 1378, 2292	
\l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 82, 1375, 2273, 2308
\l_@@_fontid_tl . . . . .	1088, 1090,
1304, 1308, 1310, 1320, 1325, 2343	
\l_@@_fontname_bf_tl . . . . .	76,
1140, 1357, 1363, 1376, 2228, 2657	
\l_@@_fontname_bfit_tl . . . . .	78, 1141,
1356–1358, 1379, 2250, 2643, 2665	
\l_@@_fontname_bfsl_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 80, 1371, 1380, 2258
\l_@@_fontname_it_tl . . . . .	77,
1139, 1356, 1368, 1377, 2245, 2635	
\l_@@_fontname_sc_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 81, 1519, 1531, 2268
\l_@@_fontname_sl_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 79, 1371, 1378, 2254
\l_@@_fontname_tl . . . . .	715, 717, 721
\l_@@_fontname_up_tl . . . . .	. . . . . 75, 1076, 1191, 1200,

1202, 1203, 1205, 1207, 2206, 2210	\l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl . . . . .
\l_@@_fontopts_clist . . . . .	. . . . . 98, 1718, 2448, 2453, 2458
1167, 1168, 1178, 1471, 1479, 1480	\l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist . . . . .
\l_@@_graphite_bool . . . . . 29, 1417	. . . 840, 843, 1095, 1298, 1345,
\l_@@_hexcol_tl . . . . .	1544, 1545, 1551, 1676, 1685, 1712
1294, 1296, 1715, 2499, 2503, 2516	\l_@@_saved_fontname_tl . . 1489, 1502
\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist . . . . .	\l_@@_scale_tl . . . . .
. 1189, 1192–1194, 1270, 1271,	. 331, 1549, 1713, 2377, 2378, 2391
1275, 1277, 1281, 1283, 1287, 1288	\l_@@_script_exist_bool . . . . .
\l_@@_lang_name_tl . . 91, 269, 1244,	. . . . . 43, 2943, 2950, 2956
1246, 1249, 1256, 1258, 1261, 2185	\l_@@_script_int . . . . .
\l_@@_language_int . . . . .	. . 45, 898, 925, 958, 977, 1347,
. . . . . 46, 901, 926, 1348,	1856, 1861, 1891, 1899, 2949, 2967
1892, 1899, 2983, 2995, 3004, 3011	\l_@@_script_name_tl . . . . . 89, 269,
\l_@@_leftover_clist . . . . . 1469, 1471	279, 1239, 1243, 1248, 1260, 2180
\l_@@_mapping_tl . . . . . 93, 1291,	\l_@@_size_tl . . . . .
1292, 2543, 2547, 2700, 2701, 3594	1501, 1506, 1507, 1542, 1549, 2330
\l_@@_mm_bool 28, 1416, 1423, 2578, 2583	\l_@@_sizedfont_tl . . . . .
\l_@@_never_check_bool . . . . .	. . . . . 1502, 1510, 1512, 2334
. . . . . 41, 837, 1821, 1850, 1883	\l_@@_sizefeat_clist . . . . .
\l_@@_nfss_enc_tl . . . . . 563,	. . . . . 61, 1400, 1406, 2307, 2312
573, 579, 590, 596, 607, 613, 664,	\l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist . . . . .
1333, 1556, 1563, 1592, 1700, 2338	. . . . . 1505, 1511, 1537
\l_@@_nfss_fam_tl . . . 1306, 1308, 2342	\l_@@_smcp_shape_tl . . . . .
\l_@@_nfss_prop . . . . . 63, 2232, 2279	. . . . . 1052, 1055, 1058, 1061
\l_@@_nfss_sc_tl . . . . .	\l_@@_strnum_int . . . . . 47,
. . . . . 1488, 1536, 1561, 1564, 1623	1825, 1831, 1854, 1861, 1894,
\l_@@_nfss_tl . . 1487, 1511, 1557, 1611	1900, 2949, 2967, 2983, 3004, 3011
\l_@@_nfssfont_prop . . . 64, 1382, 1405	\l_@@_strong_int . . 51, 4057, 4060,
\l_@@_nobf_bool . . . . . 19,	4061, 4064, 4066, 4069, 4080, 4083
1354, 1361, 2123, 2216, 2219, 2658	\l_@@_strong_switch_tl . . . 4066, 4067
\l_@@_noit_bool . . . . . 20,	\l_@@_strong_tmp_tl . . . . . 4058, 4060
1354, 1366, 2124, 2241, 2244, 2636	\l_@@_strongdef_int . . . . .
\l_@@_nosc_bool . . . . .	. . . . . 52, 4040, 4047–4049
. . 21, 1517, 1528, 1534, 2264, 2267	\l_@@_tfm_bool . . . . . 25, 1413, 1419
\l_@@_opacity_tl . . . . . 1294,	\l_@@_this_feat_tl . . 2350, 2363, 2368
1296, 1714, 2517, 2522, 2529, 2534	\l_@@_this_font_tl 1397, 1403, 1406,
\l_@@_optical_size_tl . . . . .	2313, 2314, 2318, 2351, 2362, 2368
. . . . . 1224, 1695, 2575, 2592	\l_@@_tmp_int 48, 2527, 2528, 2536, 2537
\l_@@_options_tl . . . . . 714, 717, 721	\l_@@_tmp_tl . . . . 690, 691, 695, 698,
\l_@@_ot_bool . . . . . 27, 836,	702, 703, 713, 897, 898, 900, 901,
882, 895, 923, 940, 955, 974, 991,	957, 958, 993, 994, 1010, 1011,
1008, 1273, 1415, 1426, 1433,	1313, 1314, 1316–1318, 1322, 1401
1439, 1633, 1661, 1691, 2573, 2583	\l_@@_tmpa_bool . . . . . 1128, 1131, 1133
\l_@@_postadjust_tl . . . . .	\l_@@_tmpa_dim . . . . . 55, 2388, 2393
. . . . . 1557, 1564, 1593,	\l_@@_tmpa_fp . . . . . 53
1624, 1626, 1716, 2465, 2475, 2487	\l_@@_tmpb_dim . . . . . 56, 2389, 2394
\l_@@_pre_feat_sclist 1345, 1551, 1630	\l_@@_tmpb_fp . . . . . 54
\l_@@_prev_unicode_name_tl 3762, 3767	\l_@@_tmpb_tl . . . . . 695–698
\l_@@_primitive_font . . . . . 447, 448	\l_@@_tmpc_dim . . . . . 57
\l_@@_proceed_bool . . 1794, 1803, 1807	



<code>\msg_warning:nn</code> .....	133	<code>\prg_return_true:</code> .....	438, 450, 455, 849, 854, 865, 882, 906, 927, 942, 961, 978, 995, 1012, 1038, 1046, 1064, 1133, 1327, 1464, 1822, 1838, 1844, 1851, 1868, 1877, 1884, 1907, 1920, 2094, 3959
<code>\msg_warning:nxx</code> .....	134	<code>\prg_set_conditional:Nnn</code> ...	435, 443
<code>\msg_warning:nxxx</code> .....	135	<code>\ProcessOptions</code> .....	380
<b>N</b>			
<code>\newAATfeature</code> .....	524, <u>741</u>	<code>\prop_clear:N</code> .....	3983, 4039
<code>\NewDocumentCommand</code> .....	464, 468, 472, 476, 480, 484, 488, 492, 496, 500, 504, 508, 512, 516, 520, 524, 528, 532, 536, 540, 544, 548, 552, 556, 4184	<code>\prop_get:cnN</code> 714, 715, 860, 879, 892, 897, 900, 903, 904, 920, 937, 952, 957, 959, 971, 988, 993, 1005, 1010	<code>\prop_get:NnNT</code> .....
<code>\newfontface</code> .....	504, <u>669</u>	<code>\prop_get:NnNTF</code> .....	120
<code>\newfontfamily</code> .....	500, <u>656</u> , <u>671</u>	<code>\prop_get:NVNF</code> ..	695, 1167, 1170, 1479
<code>\newfontfeature</code> .....	520, <u>731</u>	<code>\prop_get:NxNT</code> .....	4017, 4058
<code>\newfontlanguage</code> ....	<u>548</u> , 3187–3568	<code>\prop_get:NxNTF</code> .....	4025, 4066
<code>\newfontscript</code> .....	<u>544</u> , 3043–3186	<code>\prop_gput:cnV</code> .....	1347–1350
<code>\newICUfeature</code> .....	<u>532</u>	<code>\prop_gput:cnx</code> .....	1340–1342
<code>\newopentypefeature</code> .....	528, <u>751</u>	<code>\prop_gput:Nnn</code> ..	119, 1751, 1924–2045
<code>\normalfont</code> .....	581, 598, 615, 3996, 4043, 4078	<code>\prop_gput:NVV</code> .....	698
<code>\normalsize</code> .....	408, 1578	<code>\prop_gput:Nxn</code> .....	4001, 4048
<code>\not@math@alphabet</code> .....	3929, 3963, 3968, 3973, 3978	<code>\prop_gput_if_new:Nnn</code> .....	118
<code>\null</code> .....	4122	<code>\prop_gput_if_new:NxV</code> ....	4000, 4047
<code>\nullfont</code> .....	437	<code>\prop_gremove:NV</code> .....	702
<code>\numexpr</code> .....	2085	<code>\prop_if_in:NnF</code> .....	1749
<b>O</b>			
<code>\oldstylenums</code> .....	<u>4180</u>	<code>\prop_if_in:NVF</code> .....	1152
<code>\Omega</code> .....	3848	<code>\prop_map_inline:Nn</code> .....	1382
<code>\or</code> .....	1420, 1425	<code>\prop_new:c</code> .....	1339
<b>P</b>			
<code>\par</code> .....	4160	<code>\prop_new:N</code> .....	62–67
<code>\Path</code> .....	<u>2121</u>	<code>\prop_put:Nnn</code> .....	116, 117
<code>\Phi</code> .....	3846	<code>\prop_put:NVn</code> .....	703
<code>\Pi</code> .....	3843	<code>\prop_put:NxV</code> .....	2232, 2279
<code>\prg_new_conditional:Nnn</code> .....	452, 830, 852, 856, 875, 888, 916, 933, 948, 967, 984, 1001, 1032, 1042, 1048, 1123, 1300, 1458, 1819, 1848, 1881, 2067, 3948	<code>\prop_put:Nxx</code> .....	1405
<code>\prg_return_false:</code> .....	440, 449, 457, 846, 849, 854, 865, 868, 872, 882, 885, 906, 909, 913, 927, 929, 931, 942, 944, 946, 961, 963, 965, 978, 980, 982, 995, 997, 999, 1012, 1014, 1016, 1039, 1046, 1063, 1066, 1133, 1327, 1463, 1838, 1844, 1868, 1877, 1907, 1920, 2071, 2091, 3959	<code>\providecommand</code> 3706–3711, 3925, 3926	<code>\Psi</code> .....
			3847
<b>Q</b>			
		<code>\q_nil</code> ...	762, 763, 1722, 1724, 1727, 1728, 1730, 1816, 1817, 2904, 2916
		<code>\q_stop</code> .....	106, 107, 2419, 2422
<b>R</b>			
<code>\relax</code> .....	2085, 3710, 3815, 3929, 3968, 3973, 3978, 4122	<code>\RenewDocumentCommand</code> .....	4180
<code>\RequirePackage</code> .....	4, 406, 420	<code>\RequirePackageWithOptions</code> ....	6, 8
<code>\reset@font</code> .....	<u>4076</u>	<code>\rmdefault</code> ...	403, 570, 578, 653, 2385
<code>\rmdefault</code> ...	403, 570, 578, 653, 2385	<code>\rmfamily</code> .....	571, 2407
<code>\rmfamily</code> .....	571, 2407		



S	
<code>\scan_stop:</code>	425, 429, 454, 462, 4103
<code>\scdefault</code>	1570–1572, 1615, 1616, 3925, 3926, 3934–3937, 3940, 3941, 3974
<code>\scshape</code>	3961
<code>\selectfont</code>	564, 575, 592, 609, 665, 724, 2386, 3930, 3945, 3946
<code>\seq_gput_right:Nx</code>	2202
<code>\seq_if_empty:NT</code>	2222
<code>\seq_new:N</code>	58
<code>\seq_put_right:Nx</code>	2225
<code>\setboldmathrm</code>	484, 624, 650
<code>\setmainfont</code>	468, 567
<code>\SetMathAlphabet</code>	3862– 3865, 3869, 3872–3874, 3876, 3877
<code>\setmathrm</code>	480, 618, 649
<code>\setmathsf</code>	488, 630, 651
<code>\setmathtt</code>	492, 636, 652
<code>\setmonofont</code>	476, 601
<code>\setromanfont</code>	496
<code>\setsansfont</code>	472, 584
<code>\SetSymbolFont</code>	3803, 3860, 3866
<code>\settoheight</code>	2405
<code>\sfdefault</code>	404, 587, 595, 654
<code>\sffamily</code>	588
<code>\Sigma</code>	3844
<code>\slshape</code>	3925
<code>\sldefault</code>	1378, 1380, 1589, 1592, 1606, 1608, 3926, 3935, 3937, 3939, 3969
<code>\slscdefault</code>	1619, 1620, 3926, 3935, 3937–3939, 3941
<code>\slshape</code>	3961, 3987
<code>\space</code>	331, 2075, 2080, 2085
<code>\str_case:nn</code>	1601, 1613, 1818
<code>\str_case:nnF</code>	765, 2372
<code>\str_case_x:nnF</code>	2444
<code>\str_if_eq:nnTF</code>	122, 2407, 2473, 2553, 2958
<code>\str_if_eq:nVTF</code>	994, 1011
<code>\str_if_eq_p:nn</code>	1726
<code>\str_if_eq_x:nnF</code>	1215, 1294, 2189
<code>\str_if_eq_x:nnT</code>	578, 595, 612, 1137
<code>\str_if_eq_x:nnTF</code>	1462
<code>\str_if_eq_x_p:nn</code>	1588, 1589
<code>\str_lower_case:f</code>	1137, 2189
<code>\string</code>	150, 154, 189, 209, 229
<code>\strong</code>	4074
<code>\strongenv</code>	4053, 4074
<code>\strongfontdeclare</code>	4037, 4084
<code>\strongreset</code>	4044, 4070, 4074
<code>\sys_if_engine luatex:T</code>	3
<code>\sys_if_engine xetex:T</code>	7
T	
<code>\tex_hyphenchar:D</code>	462
<code>\textsi</code>	3925
<code>\textvisiblespace</code>	4110
<code>\the</code>	4160
<code>\thelisting@line</code>	4159
<code>\Theta</code>	3840
<code>\tilde</code>	3807
<code>\tl_clear:N</code>	696, 1172, 1487, 1488, 1501, 1694–1699, 1712, 1713, 1717, 1718, 2142, 2351, 2363, 2701
<code>\tl_const:cn</code>	3934–3941
<code>\tl_count:n</code>	2502, 2505
<code>\tl_gclear:N</code>	832
<code>\tl_gput_right:Nx</code>	1598, 1676
<code>\tl_gremove_all:Nn</code>	1685
<code>\tl_gset:cx</code>	1320
<code>\tl_gset:Nn</code>	2996, 3006, 3013
<code>\tl_gset:Nv</code>	1325
<code>\tl_gset:Nx</code>	1674, 2153, 2166, 2201, 2224, 2338, 2391, 2951, 2984
<code>\tl_gset_eq:NN</code>	1700
<code>\tl_if_empty:fF</code>	1624
<code>\tl_if_empty:NF</code>	1291, 1403, 1561, 1635, 1646, 2087, 2638, 2660
<code>\tl_if_empty:nF</code>	124, 125, 1747
<code>\tl_if_empty:NT</code>	1244, 1256, 1428, 1448, 1506, 2313
<code>\tl_if_empty:nT</code>	1797
<code>\tl_if_empty:NTF</code>	846, 1239, 1519, 2070, 2090, 3867
<code>\tl_if_empty:nTF</code>	123, 701, 1758, 2057, 2214, 2239, 2262, 2424
<code>\tl_if_empty:xF</code>	1446
<code>\tl_if_empty:xTF</code>	1399
<code>\tl_if_eq:ccTF</code>	1060
<code>\tl_if_eq:NNF</code>	2517, 2529
<code>\tl_if_eq:nnT</code>	126
<code>\tl_if_eq:oxT</code>	2227
<code>\tl_if_exist:cTF</code>	1570
<code>\tl_if_exist:NT</code>	2344
<code>\tl_if_exist_p:c</code>	3951
<code>\tl_if_in:NnF</code>	2357
<code>\tl_if_in:NnT</code>	408, 1115
<code>\tl_if_in:nnT</code>	1130, 3987, 3989
<code>\tl_if_in:nnTF</code>	1044

<code>\tl_if_single:nTF</code> . . . . .	689, 2481
<code>\tl_new:N</code> . . . . .	68–95
<code>\tl_put_left:Nn</code> . . . . .	2087
<code>\tl_put_right:Nn</code> . . . . .	697, 2475, 2487
<code>\tl_put_right:Nx</code> . . . . .	1547, 2465
<code>\tl_remove_all:Nn</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	821, 1112, 1151, 1314, 1393
<code>\tl_remove_once:Nn</code> . . . . .	1117
<code>\tl_replace_all:Nnn</code> . . . . .	127, 4013
<code>\tl_replace_all:Nnx</code> . . . . .	1392
<code>\tl_set:cn</code> . . . . .	2171–2176
<code>\tl_set:Nn</code> . . . . .	96–98, 399, 400,
. . . . .	402–405, 653–655, 976, 1020,
. . . . .	1027, 1055, 1118, 1243, 1246,
. . . . .	1258, 1431, 1434, 1630, 1703,
. . . . .	2126, 2136, 2180, 2185, 2191,
. . . . .	2192, 2196, 2197, 2314, 2318,
. . . . .	2330, 2426, 2434, 2448, 2453,
. . . . .	2458, 2482, 2483, 2503, 2516,
. . . . .	2522, 2543, 2547, 2575, 2592,
. . . . .	2633, 2655, 2700, 2948, 2966,
. . . . .	2982, 2994, 3005, 3012, 3594, 3763
<code>\tl_set:No</code> . . . . .	690, 2349
<code>\tl_set:Nv</code> . . . . .	2151, 2164
<code>\tl_set:Nx</code> . . . . .	1088,
. . . . .	1111, 1150, 1313, 1391, 1397,
. . . . .	1451, 2069, 2075, 2080, 2083,
. . . . .	2093, 2342, 2377, 2378, 2534, 4009
<code>\tl_set_eq:Nc</code> . . . . .	1052
<code>\tl_set_eq:NN</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	407, 409, 410, 413, 414, 570, 579,
. . . . .	587, 596, 604, 613, 1022, 1029,
. . . . .	1030, 1191, 1298, 1489, 1502,
. . . . .	1714–1716, 2228, 2350, 2362,
. . . . .	2635, 2643, 2657, 2665, 3762, 3767
<code>\tl_to_str:N</code> . . . . .	1088
<code>\tl_to_str:n</code> . . . . .	1045, 3781
<code>\tl_trim_spaces:n</code> . . . . .	143, 145
<code>\tl_use:c</code> . . . . .	1571, 3945, 3956
<code>\token_to_str:N</code> . . . . .	2497, 3781
<code>\tracingall</code> . . . . .	1276
<code>\ttdefault</code> . . . . .	405, 604, 612, 655
<code>\ttfamily</code> . . . . .	605
<code>\two@digits</code> . . . . .	2895, 2907
<code>\typeout</code> . . . . .	101, 103,
. . . . .	709, 717, 769, 776, 794, 802, 809,
. . . . .	826, 827, 843, 844, 1070, 1090,
. . . . .	1104, 1125, 1148, 1161, 1185,
. . . . .	1199, 1200, 1205, 1267, 1275,
. . . . .	1281, 1287, 1303, 1304, 1411,
. . . . .	1477, 1486, 1507, 1512, 1523,
	1527, 1542, 1545, 1576, 1671,
	1675, 1681, 1684, 1690, 1771,
	1792, 1887, 1912, 2230, 2355,
	2360, 3922, 4016, 4020, 4057, 4061
	<b>U</b>
<code>\UndeclareComposite</code> . . . . .	3776
<code>\UndeclareSymbol</code> . . . . .	3769
<code>\UndeclareTextCommand</code> . . . . .	3773
<code>\unexpanded</code> . . . . .	1161
<code>\UnicodeEncodingName</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	3718, 3724, 3730, 3736,
. . . . .	3742, 3762, 3763, 3767, 3773, 3781
<code>\UnicodeFontFile</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	3706, 3752, 3754, 3756, 3758, 3760
<code>\UnicodeFontName</code> . . . . .	3707
<code>\UnicodeFontTeXLigatures</code> . . . . .	3708,
. . . . .	3709, 3752, 3754, 3756, 3758, 3760
<code>\updefault</code> . . . . .	
. . . . .	1062, 1375, 1376, 1603, 1604,
. . . . .	3859, 3860, 3863–3866, 3872,
. . . . .	3873, 3876, 3877, 3940, 3941, 3979
<code>\upshape</code> . . . . .	3961, 4034, 4036
<code>\Upsilon</code> . . . . .	3845
<code>\use:c</code> . . . . .	232, 663
<code>\use:n</code> . . . . .	1229, 1504
<code>\use:x</code> . . . . .	571, 588, 605, 659, 718, 2901
<code>\use_i:nnn</code> . . . . .	2368
<code>\use_ii:nnn</code> . . . . .	2368
<code>\use_iii:nnn</code> . . . . .	2349
<code>\use_none:nn</code> . . . . .	642–648
<code>\usefont</code> . . . . .	4109
<code>\UTFencname</code> . . . . .	407
	<b>V</b>
<code>\verb</code> . . . . .	4120
<code>\verb*</code> . . . . .	4120
<code>\verb@eol@error</code> . . . . .	4124
<code>verbatim*</code> (environment) . . . . .	4136
<code>\verbatim@font</code> . . . . .	4125
<code>\verbatim@line</code> . . . . .	4160
<code>\verbatim@processline</code> . . . . .	4157
<code>\verbatim@start</code> . . . . .	4142, 4162
	<b>X</b>
<code>\xetex_suppressfontnotfounderror:D</code> . . . . .	433
<code>\XeTeXcountvariations</code> . . . . .	1422
<code>\XeTeXfeaturename</code> . . . . .	2069
<code>\XeTeXfonttype</code> . . . . .	1418
<code>\XeTeXisexclusivefeature</code> . . . . .	2073

<code>\XeTeXOTcountfeatures</code> .....	1890	<code>\XeTeXpicfile</code> .....	418, 419, 421
<code>\XeTeXOTcountlanguages</code> .....	1856	<code>\XeTeXselectorname</code> ..	2075, 2080, 2085
<code>\XeTeXOTcountscripts</code> .....	1826	<code>\Xi</code> .....	3842
<code>\XeTeXOTfeaturetag</code> .....	1899	<code>\xlx@defaultthyphenchar</code> ...	4093, 4099
<code>\XeTeXOTlanguagetag</code> .....	1861		
<code>\XeTeXOTscripttag</code> .....	1831		
			<b>Z</b>
		<code>\z@</code> .....	4092